MYCOBACTERIAL STRAIN DIVERSITY: IMPACT ON THE HOST IMMUNE RESPONSE

by Frank A. Post

Thesis presented for the Degree of DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY
in the Department of Medical Microbiology, Faculty of Health Sciences
University of Cape Town

Date: July 2003

University of Cape Town

The copyright of this thesis vests in the author. No quotation from it or information derived from it is to be published without full acknowledgement of the source. The thesis is to be used for private study or non-commercial research purposes only.

Published by the University of Cape Town (UCT) in terms of the non-exclusive license granted to UCT by the author.

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

Page

Table of contents		iii
Abstract		iv
Acknowledgements		v
List of Figures and Tables		vii
Publications arising from this work		ix
Abbreviations		x
Chapter 1	General Introduction *Discussion of the literature*	1
Chapter 2	General Methods *Materials and experimental techniques used*	35
Chapter 3	Tumor necrosis factor-alpha mediated growth restriction of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* H37Ra is observed in mouse macrophages but not in human monocytes *in vitro*	57
Chapter 4	The 19-kilodalton lipoprotein of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* inhibits *Mycobacterium smegmatis*-induced cytokine production by human macrophages *in vitro*	77
Chapter 5	IL-12 and TNF-α production in tuberculosis patients with different extents of pulmonary disease	97
Chapter 6	Growth of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* at the surface of the cavity reflects a microenvironment with failed immunity	113
Chapter 7	Genetic polymorphism in *M. tuberculosis* isolates from patients with chronic multi-drug resistant tuberculosis	141
Chapter 8	Concluding remarks *Summary of the results and findings in this thesis*	157
References		169

University of Cape Town

ABSTRACT

This thesis examined the impact of mycobacterial strain diversity on the interaction between host phagocyte and mycobacterium *in vitro*, and the extent to which strain polymorphism is observed in selected patients with pulmonary tuberculosis (TB). Human monocytes and mouse macrophages were infected with previously characterized mycobacterial strains. Infection of human monocytes with *M. tuberculosis* (MTB) HN878, which causes more severe disease in mice, or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa, which failed to protect mice when administered as a vaccine, resulted in reduced production of tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α), interleukin-12 (IL-12) and IL-6 compared to MTB strain CDC1551 and *M. smegmatis* respectively. Monocytes from patients with more severe pulmonary TB produced less TNF-α, IL-12 and IL-6 in response to infection, and these cells were more permissive for MTB replication. Whereas similar intracellular growth of H37Ra and H37Rv was observed in human monocytes, replication of H37Ra but not H37Rv was restricted by a TNF-α dependent, inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) and interferon-gamma (IFN-γ) independent mechanism in mouse macrophages.

Mycobacterial strain diversity *in vivo* was examined in serial sputum samples and lung tissue from patients with chronic, multi-drug resistant (MDR) TB. Although TB in each patient was caused by a single MTB strain, the drug-resistance conferring loci were frequently polymorphic. Acquisition of additional drug resistance mutations occurred preferentially at the cavity surface where mycobacteria were most numerous. Absence of $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-lymphocytes from this area may have contributed to a reduced ability of the macrophages to control bacillary growth. In areas of the lung where $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells were co-localized with macrophages, IL-2, IL-12, IFN-γ and iNOS was readily detected and few if any bacilli were observed.

These results support the concept that mycobacterial isolates that elicit a robust pro-inflammatory cytokine response may enable the host to mount a more protective immune response as judged by enhanced vaccine efficacy, reduced permissiveness of phagocytes for mycobacterial replication, or less severe pulmonary disease. Even in areas with intense MTB transmission, human TB is caused by a single MTB strain that may undergo genetic changes during treatment. This genetic polymorphism may result in the presence of drug susceptible and drug resistant bacilli in the lungs of TB patients.

University of Cape Town

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The clinical research presented in this thesis was carried out in Cape Town, South Africa, an area where TB is highly endemic. Without the help of many dedicated people and the existing TB infrastructure, it would have been impossible to have carried out these studies.

The cytokine studies in patients with tuberculosis were carried out at Brooklyn Chest Hospital and Chapel Street Clinic, Cape Town. Special thanks to Peter Morris and Barbara Karpakis for access to their patients, and the nursing staff at these facilities for assistance with patient recruitment. The study involving the lung specimen was initiated by Linda-Gail Bekker, and would have been impossible without the enthusiasm and dedication of Gabi Walther, thoracic surgeon and Helen Wainwright, pathologist. Monica Chojnacki and her team performed the mycobacterial cultures on lung tissue and sputum; Marlein Bosman and her team at the SAIMR TB reference laboratory tested the phenotypic susceptibility of our MDR isolates. Sincere thanks to Paul Willcox for access to the serial sputum isolates of patients with chronic MDR tuberculosis, and Karen Shean for access to the treatment history of these patients.

The laboratory work was carried out in the laboratories of Gilla Kaplan and Barry Kreiswirth in New York, USA, and Lafras Steyn in Cape Town. Claudia Manca's help was invaluable with setting up the human monocyte cultures and handling of mycobacteria. Flow cytometry was initiated with help from Patrick Haslett and Willem Hanekom, and electron microscopy performed by Wilhelmine Hellmann. Recombinant *M. smegmatis* strains were provided by Olivier Neyrolles and Douglas Young at Imperial College, London, UK. Mouse macrophage cultures were established with the help of Sherry Freeman in New York and Linda-Gail Bekker in Cape Town. Mice were provided by Bernhard Ryffel, and genotyping of mice was carried out with help from Berenice Arendse.

IS*6110* fingerprinting was set up with Elena Shashkina; sequence analysis of the genetic drug targets was carried out by Srinand Ramaswamy at Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, Texas. Barun Mathema and Natalya Kurepina at the Public Health Research Institute helped with the interpretation of gels and sequence analysis results. Histology was carried out under direct supervision of Gilla Kaplan; immune histology was performed by Andre Moreira. Melike Tanverdi performed the Taqman analysis, Liana Tsenova the mouse infections and Juliano Timm the molecular beacon analysis.

University of Cape Town

The latter phase of the work was carried out under the Fogarty program. At Columbia University I have enjoyed the interactions with David Hoos, Zena Stein and Wafaa El-Sadr, and thank Mani Sengupta for assistance. In Cape Town, encouragement from Linda-Gail Bekker, Gary Maartens, Douglas Wilson and Marc Mendelson has been a great help. I thank Bernard Ryffel, Lafras Steyn and Ralph Steinman for access to their facilities, and Judy Adams and Liana Tsenova for help with preparing the figures, and Sabrina Dalton for secretarial assistance. Special thanks to Marguerite Nulty for organizing accommodation, transport and providing support while far from home, and Vicky Freedman for advise, critical comments and help with the manuscripts. Many stimulating discussions with Lafras Steyn, Barry Kreiswirth and John McKinney have helped to put the observations in perspective. None of the studies however would have been possible without the tireless direction and supervision from Gilla Kaplan. The five years have been a hugely stimulating learning experience, and I look forward to future collaborations in the field of tuberculosis.

Finally, I wish to thank my new colleagues in Nijmegen for allowing me to return to the lab in New York, and last but not least the entire Merriman menagerie for their consideration with respect to my frequent absence over the years and adapting to a new home.

University of Cape Town

LIST OF FIGURES AND TABLES

CHAPTER 3: TNF-α mediated growth restriction of *M. tuberculosis* H37Ra

Figure 3-1 RFLP fingerprints of the *M. tuberculosis* strains H37Ra and H37Rv.

Figure 3-2 Growth of H37Ra and H37Rv in human monocytes.

Figure 3-3 Growth of H37Ra and H37Rv in mouse peritoneal macrophages.

Figure 3-4 Growth rates of H37Ra and H37Rv in peritoneal macrophages from selected gene-deficient and wild type mice.

Figure 3-5 TNF-α production by MTB infected peritoneal murine macrophages and human monocytes.

University of Cape Town

CHAPTER 4: The 19-kilodalton lipoprotein of *M. tuberculosis*

Figure 4-1 Number of intracellular mycobacteria following infection of monocyte derived macrophages with *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa.

Figure 4-2 Electron micrographs of MDM 5h post infection with *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa.

Figure 4-3 Cytokine production by MDM infected with *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa.

Figure 4-4 Effect of post-translational modification of the 19kDa antigen on cytokine production.

Figure 4-5 Expression of cell surface markers on uninfected MDM or MDM infected with *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa.

Figure 4-6 Effect of exogenously added 19kDa lipoprotein on TNF-α and IL-12 production by MDM.

CHAPTER 5: IL-12 and TNF-α production in tuberculosis patients

Table 5-1 Demographic and radiographic characteristics of the subjects

Figure 5-1 Examples of pre-treatment chest radiographs of patients classified as having limited or extensive tuberculosis disease

Figure 5-2 Plasma cytokine levels in patients with a limited pulmonary TB or extensive pulmonary disease on chest radiograph.

Figure 5-3 IL-12, TNF-α and IL-6 production by freshly isolated monocytes from patients with limited or extensive TB, infected with CDC1551 or HN878 *in vitro*.

Figure 5-4 Intracellular growth of MTB in monocytes from patients with limited or extensive TB.

CHAPTER 6: Growth of *M. tuberculosis* at the surface of the cavity

Table 6-1 Characteristics of the patients and classification of their TB disease.

Table 6-2 Histopathological, microbiological and host mRNA analysis of the sampled lesions.

Figure 6-1 Pre-operative chest radiographs and resected lungs.

Figure 6-2 IS*6110* patterns of *M. tuberculosis* isolates.

Figure 6-3 Histo-pathological section of an open granuloma

Figure 6-4 Histo-pathological section of a closed, non-cavitary granuloma

Figure 6-5 Localization of macrophages and AFB in the lung lesions.

Figure 6-6 Localization of lymphoid cells within the lung lesions.

Figure 6-5 Induction of *M. tuberculosis* stress-response mRNAs.

University of Cape Town

CHAPTER 7: Genetic polymorphism in *M. tuberculosis* isolates

Table 7-1 Characteristics of the patients with MDR TB

Table 7-2 TB treatment prior to and during the study

Table 7-3 Phenotypic and genotypic drug resistance in baseline MTB cultures

Table 7-4 Genotypic polymorphism of selected *M.tuberculosis* genes

Figure 7-1 IS*6110* fingerprints of MTB isolated from sputum of 3 patients at baseline, and after 6-56 weeks of additional treatment

PUBLICATIONS THAT HAVE ARISEN FROM THIS WORK

Post FA, Manca C, Neyrolles O, Ryffel B, Young DB, Kaplan G. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* 19-kilodalton lipoprotein inhibits *Mycobacterium smegmatis*-induced cytokine production by human macrophages in vitro. Infect Immun. 69:1433-1439, 2001.

Post FA, Steyn LM, Kaplan G. IL-12 and TNF-α production in tuberculosis patients with limited or extensive pulmonary disease. Submitted.

Post FA, Willcox PA, Steyn LM, Shean K, Ramaswamy S, Shashkina E, Mathema B, Kreiswirth BN, Kaplan G. Genetic polymorphism in *M. tuberculosis* isolates from patients with chronic multi drug resistant tuberculosis. Submitted.

Timm J, Post FA, Bekker LG, Walther G, Wainwright H, Manganelli R, Chan W-T, Tsenova L, Gold B, Smith I, Kaplan G, McKinney JD. Differential expression of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* stress response genes in the lungs of mouse and humans. Submitted.

Kaplan G, Post FA, Moreira AL, Wainwright H, Kreiswirth BN, Tanverdi M, Mathema B, Ramaswamy SV, Walther G, Steyn LM, Barry 3rd CE, Bekker LG. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* growth at the cavity surface: a microenvironment with failed immunity. Submitted

University of Cape Town

ABSTRACTS OF CONFERENCE PRESENTATIONS

The 19kDa antigen of *M. tuberculosis* is a potent down-regulator of inflammatory cytokines induced by *M. smegmatis* in human macrophages in vitro. (Fourth International Conference on the Pathogenesis of Mycobacterial Infections – Stockholm, Sweden, July 1999)

Post-translational modification of the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* 19kDa antigen is essential for inhibition of cytokine production by human macrophages in vitro. (Karolinska Institutet Nobel Symposium No 114: Prevention and Treatment of Tuberculosis in the coming century – Stockholm, Sweden, August 2000)

Inhibition of *Mycobacterium smegmatis*-induced cytokine production by human macrophages in vitro requires intracellular localization of glycosylated and acylated 19kDa lipoprotein. (Molecular and Cellular Aspects of Tuberculosis Research in the Post Genome Era – Taos, NM, USA, January 2001)

Impaired IL-12 production in HIV negative patients with extensive pulmonary TB. (Fourth World Congress on Tuberculosis – Washington DC, USA, June 2002)

Drug-resistance mutations in patients with chronic TB. (Tuberculosis: Integrating Host and Pathogen Biology – Taos, NM, USA, January 2003)

ABBREVIATIONS

ADC	:	Albumin, dextrose, catalase
AFB	:	Acid-fast bacilli
Ag	:	Antigen
BCG	:	*Mycobacterium bovis Bacillus Calmette-Guerin*
bp	:	Basepair
BSL-3	:	Biosafety laboratory level 3
CCR	:	C-C chemokine receptor
CD	:	Cluster of differentiation
CDC	:	Centers for Diseases Control
CF	:	Culture filtrate
CFP	:	Culture filtrate protein
CFU	:	Colony forming unit
CTAB	:	Hexadecyl trimethyl ammonium bromide
CTL	:	Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte
CTLA	:	CTL antigen
DC	:	Dendritic cell
DC-SIGN	:	DC-specific ICAM-3 grabbing nonintegrin
DMEM	:	Dulbecco's minimum essential medium
D10	:	DMEM 10% FCS
DNA	:	Deoxyribonucleic acid
dNTP	:	Deoxy nucleoside tri phosphate
DOTS	:	Directly observed treatment-short course
E	:	Ethambutol
EDTA	:	Ethylene diamine tetra acetic acid
ELISA	:	Enzyme linked immunosorbent assay
FACS	:	Fluorescence-activated cell sorter
FAS I/II	:	Fatty acid synthase I/II
FasL	:	Fas ligand
FCS	:	Fetal calf serum
FITC	:	Fluorescein isothiocyanate
H	:	Isoniazid
HAART	:	Highly active anti-retroviral therapy
hARP	:	Human acidic ribosomal protein
HRP	:	Horseradish peroxidase
HIV	:	Human immunodeficiency virus
HSP	:	Heat-shock protein
ICAM	:	Intra cellular adhesion molecule
ICL	:	Isocitrate lyase-1
IFN-γ	:	Interferon-gamma
IFN-γR	:	IFN-γ receptor
IL	:	Interleukin
INH	:	Isoniazid
iNOS	:	Inducible nitric oxide synthase
IP	:	Interferon-inducing protein
IR	:	Induction ratio
kDa	:	Kilo-dalton
KO	:	Knock-out (gene-deficient)
LAM	:	Lipoarabinomannan

University of Cape Town

LJ	:	Loewenstein-Jensen
LPS	:	Lipopolysaccharide
M	:	Molar
ManLAM	:	Mannosylated LAM
MCP	:	Monocyte chemotactic protein
MDM	:	Monocyte-derived macrophages
MDR	:	Multi-drug resistant (at least isoniazid and rifampin)
MGIT	:	Mycobacteria growth indicator tube
MIP	:	Macrophage inflammatory protein
MHC	:	Major histo-compatibility complex
mRNA	:	Messenger RNA
MOI	:	Multiplicity of infection
MTB	:	*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*
NA	:	Non-acylated
NF-κB	:	Nuclear factor κB
NK	:	Natural Killer
NO	:	Nitric oxide
NOG	:	Non-O-glycosylated
NRAMP	:	Natural resistance-associated macrophage protein-1
NS	:	Non-secreted
OADC	:	Oleic acid, albumin, dextrose, catalase
OD	:	Optical density
PBMC	:	Peripheral blood mononuclear cells
PBS	:	Phosphate buffered saline
PCR	:	Polymerase chain reaction
PE	:	Phycoerythrin or Proline-Glutamine
Phox	:	Phagocyte oxydase
PPE	:	Proline-Proline-Glutamine
PPD	:	Purified protein derivative
r	:	Recombinant
R	:	Rifampin
RANTES	:	Regulated on activation, normal, T-cell expressed and secreted
RIF	:	Rifampicin (Rifampin)
R10/R20	:	RPMI 10%/20% human AB serum
RFLP	:	Restriction fragment length polymorphysm
RNA	:	Ribonucleic acid
RNI	:	Reactive nitrogen intermediates
ROI	:	Reactive oxygen intermediates
RPMI	:	Roswell Park Memorial Institute
RT	:	Reverse transcription
SCC	:	Short-course chemotherapy
SCID	:	Severe combined immune deficiency
SDS	:	Sodium dodecyl sulfate
SPF	:	Specific pathogen free
TACO	:	Tryptophan aspartate-containing coat
Taq	:	*Thermus aquaticus*
TB	:	Tuberculosis
TGF-β	:	Transforming growth factor-beta
T_H	:	T-helper
TLR	:	Toll-like receptor

University of Cape Town

TNF	:	Tumor necrosis factor
TNF-α	:	TNF-alpha
TNF-αR	:	TNF-α receptor
TRIS	:	Tris (hydroxy) amino methane
WCL	:	Whole cell lysate
Z	:	Pyrazinamide

University of Cape Town

Chapter 1

GENERAL INTRODUCTION

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

1.1 INTRODUCTION AND HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE

Mycobacterium tuberculosis (MTB) is a fascinating and extremely successful pathogen. Following infection, the host immune response prevents active tuberculosis (TB) in the majority of exposed persons. However, the host response fails to eradicate the infecting bacilli, leading to a state of latent infection (Sutherland, 1976). As many as 2 billion people may be latently infected with MTB, and up to 10% of these individuals will develop "reactivation" TB, often years or even decades after the initial infection. Reactivation TB is characterized by mycobacterial replication, immune activation, granuloma and cavity formation, and bacillary transmission. The introduction of effective chemotherapy did not eliminate this "scourge of all diseases" from modern society. Rather, incidence rates of tuberculosis have risen dramatically over the past 20 years, prompting the World Health Organization to declare tuberculosis a global emergency in 1993. In 1997, MTB caused eight million incident and sixteen million prevalent TB cases, resulting in two million deaths (Dye, Scheele, Dolin, *et al.*, 1999).

Historically, tuberculosis is likely to have affected humans for at least 5-10,000 years. Lesions interpreted as spinal TB have been documented in mummies, artwork and medical texts dating as far back as 5000 BC. Based on molecular analyses, it has been estimated that MTB developed as a separate pathogen a mere 15-20,000 years ago. Although it was originally postulated that MTB and *M. bovis* might have originated from a common ancestral cattle pathogen, more recent phylogenetic studies suggest that the ancestral strain of MTB was probably already a human pathogen. (Brosch, Gordon, Marmiesse, *et al.*, 2002; Sreevatsan, Pan, Stockbauer, *et al.*, 1997; Zink, Sola, Reischl, *et al.*, 2003).

The etiologic agent of TB was identified by Robert Koch in 1882. Although the infectious nature of TB had been appreciated for some time, a modified bacterial stain (alcoholic methylene-blue/potassium-hydrate stain followed by aqueous vesuvin de-stain)

University of Cape Town

allowed him to visualize "beautifully blue" bacilli within tuberculous lesions of patients with consumption. He could passage the bacilli several times on blood-serum agar after which they were still capable of causing disease in animals, and he showed that consumption and tubercle formation were part of the same disease process. Differential host susceptibility to developing TB had already been appreciated since "excessive numbers of tubercle bacilli were expectorated by consumptives and scattered everywhere", therefore "peculiar factors had to favor the implantation of bacilli and make infection possible" (Pinner and Pinner, 1932). More than a century on, the mechanisms that determine why some people but not others develop TB after exposure to MTB remain poorly understood.

1.2 EPIDEMIOLOGY OF TB

MTB is transmitted from individual to individual via the respiratory route. Following exposure, the majority (90%) of immune competent individuals controls the infection and never develops clinical disease. These persons may be identified by a positive skin test reaction to MTB antigens (purified protein derivative, PPD), defined as an induration of >10mm. Approximately 5% of exposed persons develop active disease within 2 years of exposure, and another 5% present with "reactivated" tuberculosis later in life (Bloom and Murray, 1992; Comstock, Livesay and Woolpert, 1974).

Tuberculosis in the late 1800's, accounted for 15 to 25 percent of deaths in Berlin and Paris (Pinner and Pinner, 1932). Studies performed in Europe in the first half of the twentieth century showed that clinical TB developed proportionate to MTB exposure, with annual TB incidence rates of 1,100-4,900/100,000 in tuberculin negative and 430-760 per 100,000 in tuberculin positive individuals when exposure to TB had been heavy, and 157 and 29/100,000 respectively in persons with minimal exposure (Stead, 1967). A gradual decline in number of TB deaths had been observed since the 1830's. Following the introduction of

University of Cape Town

multi-drug chemotherapy, TB incidence rates declined more sharply, in the United States at 5-7% per annum between 1955 and 1984. However, an 18% rise, accounting for 39,000 excess TB cases, was observed between 1985 and 1991. Undoubtedly, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection played a major role in this increase. HIV infected persons develop TB at rates of 3-13% per annum. Renewed efforts to limit the spread of TB, such as isolation of infectious cases, supervised treatment and preventing TB through administration of prophylaxis to PPD positive contacts, and recognition of the atypical presentations of HIV related TB and the availability of specific immune reconstituting therapy for HIV infected persons have resulted in a 31% decrease in TB incidence between 1992 and 1998 (1992; Girardi, Raviglione, Antonucci, *et al.*, 2000).

The socio-economic status of the underprivileged majority in sub-Saharan Africa has shown minimal improvement between 1955 and the 1980's. Even in countries such as South Africa that used chemotherapeutic regimens similar to those used in the USA, no decline of the tuberculosis incidence rate was observed during the 1960's, 1970's and 1980's, suggesting that chemotherapy on its own is insufficient to reduce the burden of tuberculosis in a society. Moreover, between 1990 and 1997, tuberculosis incidence rates in sub-Saharan Africa have increased by a further 35% as a result of HIV infection. In the worst affected countries such as Zimbabwe where HIV antenatal prevalence rates have reached 30%, TB case notification increased 9 fold between 1990 and 2000 (Corbett, Steketee, ter Kuile, *et al.*, 2002). Approximately half of all excess tuberculosis cases were HIV negative, reflecting increased MTB transmission in societies heavily affected by HIV and TB. With less than 50% of sputum smear positive cases detected, TB cure rates below 70%, and a reservoir of more than 10,000,000 people dually infected with HIV and MTB, it is more than likely that TB incidence rates in Africa will continue to increase (Girardi, Raviglione, Antonucci, *et al.*, 2000). HIV interventions, including prevention of vertical transmission, prophylaxis against

University of Cape Town

opportunistic infections, and anti-retroviral treatment, together with active TB case finding and TB preventive therapy will have to be utilized to reduce the impact of MTB on morbidity and mortality in sub-Saharan Africa (Corbett, Steketee, ter Kuile, *et al.*, 2002).

1.3 CLINICAL FEATURES OF TUBERCULOSIS

Cough, fever, night sweats and cachexia are the cardinal clinical features of pulmonary TB. The cough generates droplet nuclei containing infectious *M. tuberculosis*, thereby allowing transmission of the pathogen. Upon inhalation of bacilli by an uninfected person, infection may be established in the lungs. Initial replication in macrophages is followed by dissemination of bacilli to the local lymph nodes, the "vulnerable" parts of the lungs (apico-posterior segments of the upper lobes or apical segments of the lower lobes) and occasionally other parts of the body. Cell mediated immunity ensues and while usually sufficient to control bacillary replication, the host response is unable to eradicate MTB. Primary MTB infection may be asymptomatic, or result in mild disease (simple primary TB or TB pleural effusion), progressive pulmonary disease, or miliary TB (Stead, Kerby, Schlueter, *et al.*, 1968).

Post-primary (reactivation) tuberculosis occurs usually in adolescents and adults and often presents as a chronic respiratory illness localized in the vulnerable parts of the lung. On occasion, the disease may involve or be limited to the meninges, skin, joints, kidneys, lymph nodes, serosa of pleural, pericardial or peritoneal cavity, bone, liver or spleen. The typical presentation is a wasting illness associated with fever and night sweats, and a non-productive cough that may be associated with haemoptysis. In HIV sero-negative patients, the chest radiograph may reveal minimal changes, fibro-cavitation or extensive fibrosis and destruction of the lungs. Features suggesting endobronchial or hematogenous spread may be present. Lung pathology, as well as many of the symptoms of TB, may result from the host immune

University of Cape Town

response rather than from direct toxicity of the mycobacteria (Bekker, Maartens, Steyn, *et al.*, 1998; Bekker, Moreira, Bergtold, *et al.*, 2000; Moreira, Tsenova-Berkova, Wang, *et al.*, 1997).

Active TB may be confirmed by the presence of acid-fast bacilli (needle-shaped bacilli that retain carbolfuchsin dye and do not de-stain on exposure to acidic-alcohol) on microscopic examination of sputum smears. Sputum culture may be performed to confirm that the mycobacteria observed in the smear are indeed *M. tuberculosis*, to evaluate drug susceptibility profile, or to confirm the presence of MTB in sputum of "smear negative" cases.

University of Cape Town

Patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection are at increased risk of developing active TB (8% annual risk compared to the 10% lifetime risk of HIV negative persons), particularly when $CD4^+$ T-lymphocytopenia is present and exposure to MTB is high (Wood, Maartens and Lombard, 2000). Primary infection may progress to active disease in as little as 3 weeks (Daley, Small, Schecter, *et al.*, 1992; Di Perri, Cruciani, Danzi, *et al.*, 1989; Selwyn, Hartel, Lewis, *et al.*, 1989). Although pulmonary disease remains the commonest presentation (Small, Schecter, Goodman, *et al.*, 1991), extra-pulmonary disease and disseminated TB occur more frequently when HIV-induced immune suppression is advanced (Ackah, Coulibaly, Digbeu, *et al.*, 1995). Sputum smears are less often diagnostic, and chest radiographic features may be atypical (Post, Wood and Pillay, 1995). Whereas short course chemotherapy (SCC: 2 months of RHZE followed by 4 months of RH) is as effective as in HIV negative TB cases (Kassim, Sassan-Morokro, Ackah, *et al.*, 1995; Perriens, St Louis, Mukadi, *et al.*, 1995), thiacetazone based treatment is significantly more toxic in HIV infected patients and less efficacious than SCC (Okwera, Whalen, Byekwaso, *et al.*, 1994). Highly active anti-retroviral therapy (HAART) has been shown to reduce the incidence rate of TB in HIV infected persons (Badri, Wilson and Wood, 2002).

1.4 PATHOLOGICAL AND PATHOPHYSIOLOGICAL ASPECTS OF TUBERCULOSIS

The initial manifestation of MTB infection in humans (primary or Ghon complex) consists of a focal pneumonia and an inflammatory reaction in the regional lymph nodes. Ghon foci are encountered with equal frequency throughout the lungs, and when not located in the "vulnerable" parts of the lung (apico-posterior segments of the upper lobes or apical segments of the lower lobes), seldom result in progressive disease (Medlar, 1955). They commonly undergo necrosis yet heal with minimal scarring, fibrosis or calcification. Non-replicating "dormant" bacilli may persist in these lesions (or in the fibrotic scar tissue or even in normal lung tissue) for many years and cause "reactivation" TB when cellular immunity wanes (Lillebaek, Dirksen, Baess, *et al.*, 2002; Stead, 1967). Indeed, normal lung tissue from patients with latent TB was shown to contain *M. tuberculosis* DNA (Hernandez-Pando, Jeyanathan, Mengistu, *et al.*, 2000) or bacilli that gave rise to TB when injected into guinea pigs (Opie and Aronson, 1927).

Post-primary TB results from liquefaction and sloughing of a necrotic primary lesion. This occurs with increased frequency when the primary lesion is located in the "vulnerable" parts of the lung: 84% of post-primary lesions against 12% of the primary complexes are found in these areas. The early mycobacterial pneumonia, characterized by a mononuclear cell infiltrate, may progress to epithelioid and caseous granulomatous inflammation ("tubercles"). Epithelioid granulomas consist of well-organized accumulations of epithelioid macrophages and multi-nucleated giant cells surrounded by a rim of sensitized T-lymphocytes. These lesions reveal no central necrosis, contain few visible bacilli, and are considered the more favorable host response (Medlar, 1955). Caseous necrotic granulomas contain a center of distinctive granular necrosis (designated caseous because of its macroscopic appearance) and may harbor large numbers of organisms. Neutrophilic

University of Cape Town

infiltration of the infected areas appears to favor the development of caseous necrosis. These lesions are at risk of further liquefaction and sloughing, resulting in the formation of cavities, endobronchial dissemination of the infection, and progressive lung tissue destruction. Interestingly, epitheloid and necrotic tubercles are frequently present in the same patient (Medlar, 1955).

Cavities appear to offer the ideal growth conditions for MTB with an abundance of nutrients and oxygen, enabling the bacilli to maintain a relatively high state of metabolic activity (Medlar, Bernstein and Steward, 1952). Mycobacteria obtained from cavities can usually be cultured within the normal incubation period of 8 weeks (Hobby, Auerbach, Lenert, *et al.*, 1954; Vandiviere, Loring, Melvin, *et al.*, 1956). In contrast, only 10-25% of closed granulomas (lesions that do not have an open communication with a bronchus) yield viable MTB (Beck and Yegian, 1952; Medlar, Bernstein and Steward, 1952), and spontaneous or treatment-induced closure of an open granuloma is associated with a 100 to 1000-fold reduction in the number of culturable bacilli (Wayne and Salkin, 1956), suggesting that the closed lesion is likely to be an unfavorable physical and chemical environment for the bacteria (Yegian, 1952). Nonetheless, a small subset of organisms appears to adapt to the environmental changes, assuming a lowered metabolic state, and these bacilli can only be cultured after prolonged incubation (Medlar, Bernstein and Steward, 1952). It is possible that reactivation TB may arise from these "dormant" bacilli (Hobby, Auerbach, Lenert, *et al.*, 1954). These non-replicating bacilli may not be affected by the actions of present anti-tuberculous chemotherapy (Fenhalls, Stevens, Moses, *et al.*, 2002; Hobby, Auerbach, Lenert, *et al.*, 1954; Vandiviere, Loring, Melvin, *et al.*, 1956).

University of Cape Town

1.5 THE HOST RESPONSE AGAINST *M. TUBERCULOSIS*

Studies of mouse TB have provided detailed insight into many aspects of the host response to MTB. Aerosol infection is followed by logarithmic multiplication of MTB in the lungs and dissemination of bacilli to the regional lymph nodes and other organs. Cell mediated immunity results in the formation of granulomas consisting of sensitized T-cells and activated macrophages and inhibits mycobacterial replication. However, the bacilli are not eradicated, and progressive lung consolidation results in death of the animals between 200 and 300 days (Manca, Tsenova, Barry, *et al.*, 1999; Mogues, Goodrich, Ryan, *et al.*, 2001).

Phagocytosis of MTB. Phagocytosis of MTB by resident alveolar macrophages or dendritic cells (DC) initiates the host immune response. MTB may utilize several macrophage receptors, including the mannose, complement and scavenger receptors, to gain access to its intra-cellular niche, the phagosome (Ernst, 1998). Within macrophages, MTB resides within tightly apposed, individual vacuoles (Moreira, Wang, Tsenova-Berkova, *et al.*, 1997) where through the actions of mannose capped lipoarabinomannan (ManLAM) it resists the toxic effects of macrophage defense mechanisms by inhibiting acidification and maturation of the vacuole (Clemens and Horwitz, 1995; Fratti, Chua, Vergne, *et al.*, 2003; Sturgill-Koszycki, Schlesinger, Chakraborty, *et al.*, 1994; Xu, Cooper, Sturgill-Koszycki, *et al.*, 1994), and by inhibiting phagosome-lysosome fusion through retention of a tryptophan aspartate-containing coat (TACO) (Ferrari, Langen, Naito, *et al.*, 1999).

Cytokine production by phagocytes. Infected macrophages utilize Toll-like receptors (TLR) to sample phagosomal contents, and to activate appropriate cytokine and anti-microbial responses (Ozinsky, Underhill, Fontenot, *et al.*, 2000; Underhill, Ozinsky, Hajjar, *et al.*, 1999). Stimulation of TLR-2 (and to a lesser extent TLR-4) with mycobacterial cell wall components results in MyD88-dependent nuclear factor-kappa B (NF-κB) activation and transcription of the immune regulatory cytokine genes encoding tumor necrosis factor-

University of Cape Town

alpha (TNF-α) and interleukin-12 (IL-12) (Brightbill, Libraty, Krutzik, *et al.*, 1999; Means, Jones, Schromm, *et al.*, 2001; Means, Wang, Lien, *et al.*, 1999; Underhill, Ozinsky, Smith, *et al.*, 1999). MTB infection of human monocytes, which express high levels of TLR2 and TLR4 (Kadowaki, Ho, Antonenko, *et al.*, 2001), results in TNF-α and IL-12 production (Manca, Tsenova, Barry, *et al.*, 1999). Resistance of mice deficient in TLR2 or TLR4 to low dose aerosol MTB infection, however, suggests substantial redundancy for the Toll-like receptors with regards to the production of immune regulatory cytokines (Abel, Thieblemont, Quesniaux, *et al.*, 2002; Reiling, Holscher, Fehrenbach, *et al.*, 2002).

IL-12 is produced at the site of MTB infection, and contributes to the protective immune response by stimulating T-helper cell type 1 (T_H1) development, T-cell proliferation, cytolytic activity and the production of IFN-γ by lymphocytes and natural-killer (NK) cells (Chan, Perussia, Gupta, *et al.*, 1991; Chehimi, Starr, Frank, *et al.*, 1992; Hsieh, Macatonia, Tripp, *et al.*, 1993; Manetti, Parronchi, Giudizi, *et al.*, 1993; Murphy, Terres, Macatonia, *et al.*, 1994). Mice that are incapable of producing IL-12 (IL-12 "knock-out" (KO) mice), and mice treated with IL-12 neutralizing antibodies display an increased mortality when infected with MTB, an increased mycobacterial load, impaired granuloma formation and reduced IFN-γ production compared to wild-type mice. Treatment of MTB-infected mice with IL-12, on the other hand, results in enhanced mycobacterial immunity (Cooper, Magram, Ferrante, *et al.*, 1997; Cooper, Roberts, Rhoades, *et al.*, 1995; Flynn, Goldstein, Triebold, *et al.*, 1995; Lowrie, Tascon, Bonato, *et al.*, 1999). In humans, mutations in the genes encoding IL-12p40 or the IL-12 receptor result in decreased IFN-γ production by stimulated T-cells and increased susceptibility to (predominantly atypical) mycobacterial infections (Altare, Durandy, Lammas, *et al.*, 1998; Altare, Ensser, Breiman, *et al.*, 2001; Altare, Lammas, Revy, *et al.*, 1998; de Jong, Altare, Haagen, *et al.*, 1998; Fieschi, Dupuis, Catherinot, *et al.*, 2003; Frucht and Holland, 1996). IL-12 has been demonstrated in TB granulomas in human lung,

University of Cape Town

tuberculous pleural fluid, and supernatants of human monocytes infected with MTB *in vitro* (Bergeron, Bonay, Kambouchner, *et al.*, 1997; Manca, Tsenova, Barry, *et al.*, 1999; Zhang, Gately, Wang, *et al.*, 1994). These observations confirm an important role for IL-12 in the induction of MTB specific immunity in man and mice. Consequently, inhibition of IL-12 production by infected macrophages may be one of the mechanisms utilized by MTB to reduce the impact of the host immune response (Nau, Richmond, Schlesinger, *et al.*, 2002).

TNF-α is another important regulator of cell-mediated immunity and required for activation of macrophages, co-localization of lymphocytes and macrophages within granulomas, and maintenance of granuloma structure (Bean, Roach, Briscoe, *et al.*, 1999; Flynn, Goldstein, Chan, *et al.*, 1995). Granuloma formation is impaired in MTB infected mice that are deficient in TNF-α or that are treated with TNF-α neutralizing antibodies, and survival is markedly shortened compared to wild-type mice. Secretion of TNF-α by recombinant *M. bovis Bacillus Calmette Guerin* (BCG) restores the ability of TNF-α deficient mice to form granulomas and control infection (Bekker, Freeman, Murray, *et al.*, 2001). TNF-α has been demonstrated in human tuberculous granulomas, and is readily detected in the supernatants of monocytes infected with MTB *in vitro* (Bergeron, Bonay, Kambouchner, *et al.*, 1997; Fenhalls, Wong, Bezuidenhout, *et al.*, 2000; Manca, Tsenova, Barry, *et al.*, 1999). Treatment of humans with TNF-α neutralizing antibodies is associated with an increased risk of developing TB (Keane, Gershon, Wise, *et al.*, 2001). Although TNF-α has an essential role in the protective immune response against TB, this cytokine is also largely responsible for the cachexia and immunopathology associated with TB (Bekker, Maartens, Steyn, *et al.*, 1998; Bekker, Moreira, Bergtold, *et al.*, 2000; Moreira, Tsenova-Berkova, Wang, *et al.*, 1997).

Several other pro-inflammatory cytokines, including IL-1β, IL-6 and IL-18, are produced at the site of disease in patients with TB (Bergeron, Bonay, Kambouchner, *et al.*,

University of Cape Town

1997; Hoheisel, Izbicki, Roth, *et al.*, 1998; Law, Weiden, Harkin, *et al.*, 1996; Vankayalapati, Wizel, Weis, *et al.*, 2000). Mice that are deficient for any of these cytokines or their receptors display an increased susceptibility to TB (Juffermans, Florquin, Camoglio, *et al.*, 2000; Ladel, Blum, Dreher, *et al.*, 1997; Sugawara, Yamada, Kaneko, *et al.*, 1999; Yamada, Mizumo, Horai, *et al.*, 2000). On the other hand, local production of IL-10 (Barnes, Lu, Abrams, *et al.*, 1993; Gerosa, Nisii, Righetti, *et al.*, 1999; Shaw, Thomas and Friedland, 2000) or transforming growth factor-beta (TGF-β) (Condos, Rom, Liu, *et al.*, 1998; Toossi, Gogate, Shiratsuchi, *et al.*, 1995) may down-regulate the host response (Fulton, Cross, Toossi, *et al.*, 1998; Gong, Zhang, Modlin, *et al.*, 1996; Hirsch, Toossi, Othieno, *et al.*, 1999; Toossi and Ellner, 1998). It is likely that a fine balance between inflammatory and inhibitory cytokines is required to regulate cell-mediated immunity and prevent excessive tissue damage.

Chemokine production by infected macrophages and dendritic cells. The successful host response requires early migration of infected macrophages and/or DC to the regional lymph nodes to allow sensitization of T-lymphocytes (Chackerian, Alt, Perera, *et al.*, 2002). Monocytes and sensitized T-cells are recruited to the site of infection, and result in the formation of granulomas. This TNF-α dependent process requires upregulation of adhesion molecules on vascular endothelium, and production of chemokines by and expression of chemokine receptors on activated macrophages and lymphocytes (Roach, Bean, Demangel, *et al.*, 2002). MTB infection of mouse macrophages results in the production of monocyte chemotactic protein-1 (MCP-1), macrophage inflammatory protein-1α (MIP-1α), MIP-2 and interferon-inducible protein-10 (IP-10), chemokines involved in the recruitment of monocytes, T-cells, NK-cells and granulocytes. These chemokines are also upregulated in the lungs of MTB infected mice (Rhoades, Cooper and Orme, 1995). Delayed chemokine expression and cellular recruitment, and impaired granuloma formation, were observed in

University of Cape Town

MTB infected TNF-α deficient mice when compared to wild-type mice (Roach, Bean, Demangel, *et al.*, 2002). Mice that are unable to produce MCP-1 show no enhanced susceptibility to MTB, suggesting a degree of redundancy within the chemokine network (Lu, Rutledge, Gu, *et al.*, 1998). In contrast, recruitment of macrophage, dendritic cells and primed lymphocytes to the lungs was markedly impaired in MTB infected C-C chemokine receptor-2 (CCR-2) deficient mice, resulting in uncontrolled mycobacterial replication and early lethality (Peters, Scott, Chambers, *et al.*, 2001). Increased levels of the chemokines MCP-1, MIP-1α, IL-8 and regulated on activation, normal T-cell expressed and secreted (RANTES) in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid from TB patients (Kurashima, Mukaida, Fujimura, *et al.*, 1997; Sadek, Sada, Toossi, *et al.*, 1998; Zhang, Broser, Cohen, *et al.*, 1995), and expression of IL-8, MCP-1, IP-10 and RANTES in granulomas from patients with pulmonary and lymphnode TB (Devergne, Marfaing-Koka, Schall, *et al.*, 1994; Ferrero, Biswas, Vettoretto, *et al.*, 2003; Lin, Gong, Zhang, *et al.*, 1998), underscore their role in human host defense against MTB.

Antigen presentation by dendritic cells. Sensitization of T-lymphocytes requires DC to present mycobacterial antigens on major histocompatibility (MHC) or MHC-like molecules, in the context of co-stimulatory molecules and pro-inflammatory cytokines (Pulendran, Palucka and Banchereau, 2001). MTB may gain access to the intracellular compartments of immature DC through ligation of DC-SIGN (Geijtenbeek, Van Vliet, Koppel, *et al.*, 2003; Tailleux, Schwartz, Herrmann, *et al.*, 2003). Internalization of MTB results in DC maturation (increased CD83 expression), upregulation of the co-stimulatory molecules CD40 (CTLA-4), CD80 (B7.1) and CD54 (ICAM-1) and MHC class I, and production of IL-12, TNF-α and IL-1 (Henderson, Watkins and Flynn, 1997). Surface expression of MHC class II on DC allows the presentation of mycobacterial antigens derived from the phagolysosome compartment to $CD4^+$ T-cells, expression of MHC class I the

University of Cape Town

presentation of antigens from the cytosolic compartment to $CD8^+$ T-cells, and expression of CD1 the presentation of glycolipids or lipoproteins to CD1-restricted $CD4^-$ $CD8^-$ T-cells or $CD8^+$ T cells. Priming of naïve T-cells in the presence of IL-12 favors T_H1 development of lymphocytes capable of producing IFN-γ (Pulendran, Palucka and Banchereau, 2001; Trinchieri, 1997), a cytokine of principal importance in host defense against TB in mice and in humans (Cooper, Dalton, Stewart, *et al.*, 1993; Dalton, Pitts-Meek, Keshav, *et al.*, 1993; Flynn, Chan, Triebold, *et al.*, 1993; Jouanguy, Altare, Lamhamedi, *et al.*, 1996; Newport, Huxley, Huston, *et al.*, 1996).

Pathogen specific T-cell responses. The cellular immune response that controls mycobacterial replication in infected humans and mice is mediated by pathogen specific T lymphocytes that are capable of producing IFN-γ. In mice, the appearance of these cells at the site of infection is temporarily associated with control of mycobacterial replication (Chackerian, Perera and Behar, 2001; Feng, Bean, Hooi, *et al.*, 1999; Serbina and Flynn, 1999). Of the different T-lymphocyte subpopulations, MHC class II expressing, $CD4^+$ T-cells appear to be the most important mediators of host resistance to MTB (Caruso, Serbina, Klein, *et al.*, 1999; Mogues, Goodrich, Ryan, *et al.*, 2001; Muller, Cobbold, Waldmann, *et al.*, 1987; Orme, 1987). $CD4^+$ T-cells are the principal source of IFN-γ, a cytokine required for activation of mycobacteriostatic pathways within infected macrophages. In humans, $CD4^+$ T-lymphocytopenia, as observed in patients with advanced HIV infection, is associated with an increased risk of TB, and may result in severe, disseminated disease (Barnes, Bloch, Davidson, *et al.*, 1991). $CD4^+$ T-cells are present in TB granulomas, enriched at the site of disease in pleural TB (Lorgat, Keraan, Lukey, *et al.*, 1992; Tan, Canaday, Boom, *et al.*, 1997), and capable of perforin/granzyme or FAS (CD95)-FASL mediated lysis of MTB-infected macrophages (Lewinsohn, Bement, Xu, *et al.*, 1998; Oddo, Renno, Attinger, *et al.*, 1998; Oftung, Borka and Mustafa, 1998; Ottenhoff and Mutis, 1990; Tsukaguchi, Balaji and

University of Cape Town

Boom, 1995). FAS-mediated apoptosis of MTB infected macrophages by $CD4^+$ T-cells is associated with reduced mycobacterial viability (Oddo, Renno, Attinger, *et al.*, 1998).

MHC class I restricted $CD8^+$ T-lymphocytes also contribute to control of experimental MTB infection (Behar, Dascher, Grusby, *et al.*, 1999; Mogues, Goodrich, Ryan, *et al.*, 2001; Serbina and Flynn, 1999), and vaccine induced protective immunity (Bonato, Lima, Tascon, *et al.*, 1998; Tascon, Colston, Ragno, *et al.*, 1996; Tascon, Ragno, Lowrie, *et al.*, 2000). In humans, $CD8^+$ T-lymphocytes are present at the site of disease (Tan, Canaday, Boom, *et al.*, 1997) and in peripheral blood of patients with active TB or latent MTB infection (Cho, Mehra, Thoma-Uszynski, *et al.*, 2000; Gong, Stenger, Zack, *et al.*, 1998; Lalvani, Brookes, Wilkinson, *et al.*, 1998; Lewinsohn, Alderson, Briden, *et al.*, 1998; Mohagheghpour, Gammon, Kawamura, *et al.*, 1998; Rosat, Grant, Beckman, *et al.*, 1999; Stenger, Mazzaccaro, Uyemura, *et al.*, 1997). MHC class I or CD1 restricted $CD8^+$ T-cells may recognize mycobacterial antigens, produce IFN-γ, and lyse MTB infected target cells through a granule-dependent mechanism, resulting in killing of the mycobacteria (Stenger, Mazzaccaro, Uyemura, *et al.*, 1997) through the effects of granulysin, a substance with broad anti-microbial activity (Stenger, Hanson, Teitelbaum, *et al.*, 1998).

Two additional subsets of T-lymphocytes have been implicated in the host response against MTB. MTB-specific, CD1-restricted, $\alpha\beta$ T-cell receptor expressing $CD4^-CD8^-$ T-cells capable of FAS-FASL mediated target cell lysis (Beckman, Porcelli, Morita, *et al.*, 1994; Porcelli, Morita and Brenner, 1992; Sieling, Chatterjee, Porcelli, *et al.*, 1995). However, this does not affect the viability of intracellular MTB (Stenger, Mazzaccaro, Uyemura, *et al.*, 1997). Another subset of T-cells, $\gamma\delta$ T-cell receptor expressing lymphocytes, accumulates in the lungs of MTB infected mice (Griffin, Harshan, Born, *et al.*, 1991). Protective immunity in MTB infected macaques is temporarily associated with the appearance of $\gamma\delta$ T-cells in the lungs (Shen, Zhou, Qiu, *et al.*, 2002). Human $\gamma\delta$ T-cells are

University of Cape Town

capable of granule dependent lysis of MTB infected macrophages and results in granulysin-mediated reduction of bacillary viability (Dieli, Troye-Blomberg, Ivanyi, *et al.*, 2000; Dieli, Troye-Blomberg, Ivanyi, *et al.*, 2001). The relative contribution of $CD8^+$ T-cells, double negative T-cells and γδ T-cells to mycobacterial host defense mechanisms remains to be defined, since mice deficient in γδ T-cells are not impaired in their ability to control mycobacterial replication (D'Souza, Cooper, Frank, *et al.*, 1997; Mogues, Goodrich, Ryan, *et al.*, 2001).

Cytokine activation of MTB infected macrophages. Control of mycobacterial infection is the result of activation of infected macrophages by pro-inflammatory cytokines including IFN-γ and TNFα, produced in an auto- and paracrine manner by macrophages and lymphocytes in the granulomas (Fenhalls, Stevens, Bezuidenhout, *et al.*, 2002). Apoptosis (Molloy, Laochumroonvorapong and Kaplan, 1994; Oddo, Renno, Attinger, *et al.*, 1998) and lysis of infected macrophages, with exposure of MTB to granulysin (Dieli, Troye-Blomberg, Ivanyi, *et al.*, 2001; Stenger, Hanson, Teitelbaum, *et al.*, 1998), are likely to contribute to mycobacteriostasis. Since perforin, granzyme B and FAS-receptor deficient mice have normal resistance against MTB (Cooper, D'Souza, Frank, *et al.*, 1997; Laochumroonvorapong, Wang, Liu, *et al.*, 1997), cytokine production may be the predominant contribution of recruited lymphocytes to control of MTB replication in mice.

University of Cape Town

Activation of mouse macrophages by IFN-γ and TNF-α is associated with mycobacteriostatic activity against *M. tuberculosis* (Chan, Xing, Magliozzo, *et al.*, 1992; Denis, 1991; Flesch and Kaufmann, 1987; Rook, Steele, Ainsworth, *et al.*, 1986; Sato, Akaki and Tomioka, 1998). IFN-γ stimulation of mouse macrophages results in iNOS induction and the generation of reactive nitrogen intermediates (RNI) such as nitric oxide (NO), NO_2^-, and HNO_2 (Chan, Xing, Magliozzo, *et al.*, 1992). The important contribution of RNI to the control of mycobacterial replication was confirmed *in vivo* (Chan, Tanaka, Carroll, *et al.*,

1995; MacMicking, North, LaCourse, *et al.*, 1997; Mogues, Goodrich, Ryan, *et al.*, 2001). In addition to their toxic effects on phagocytosed microbes, RNI and reactive oxygen intermediates (ROI) may also have an important regulatory role in cell signaling and gene transcription (Ehrt, Schnappinger, Bekiranov, *et al.*, 2001).

In contrast to mouse macrophages, stimulation of human phagocytes with IFN-γ does not result in mycobacteriostasis (Denis, Gregg and Ghandirian, 1990; Douvas, Looker, Vatter, *et al.*, 1985; Rook, Steele, Ainsworth, *et al.*, 1986). Although human macrophages are capable of expressing iNOS (Nicholson, Bonecini-Almeida Mda, Lapa e Silva, *et al.*, 1996; Wang, Liu, Lin, *et al.*, 1998), it remains unclear whether human phagocytes posses NO-dependent mycobacteriostatic pathways (Nozaki, Hasegawa, Ichiyama, *et al.*, 1997; Thoma-Uszynski, Stenger, Takeuchi, *et al.*, 2001). Inhibition of mycobacterial replication has been observed following activation of human monocytes by TNF-α (Bermudez and Young, 1988; Denis and Gregg, 1990; Denis, Gregg and Ghandirian, 1990), vitamin D metabolites (Rook, Steele, Fraher, *et al.*, 1986) and/or iron (Byrd, 1997).

Immune mechanisms involved in controlling latent or chronic MTB infection. Drug treatment of MTB infected mice renders the organs sterile by conventional culture techniques. However, small numbers of organisms may persist for long periods of time (McCune, Tompsett and McDermott, 1956). Recrudescence of TB may occur spontaneously, and at increased frequency when glucocorticosteroids are administered (McCune, Feldmann, Lambert, *et al.*, 1966; McCune, Tompsett and McDermott, 1956). Spontaneous reactivation of TB at increased rates is also observed in drug-"sterilized" IFN-γ and TNF-α deficient mice (J.D. McKinney and B. Ryffel, unpublished observations). Exacerbation of chronic stable TB in mice is observed following treatment with TNF-α neutralizing mAbs (Mohan, Scanga, Yu, *et al.*, 2001), NOS2 inhibitors (MacMicking, North, LaCourse, *et al.*, 1997), IFN-γ neutralizing mAbs (Scanga, Mohan, Joseph, *et al.*, 1999), or anti-CD4 antibodies (Scanga,

University of Cape Town

Mohan, Yu, *et al.*, 2000), underscoring the importance of persistent cytokine activation of infected macrophages, RNI mediated mycobacteriostasis, and T-cell mediated immunity in the control of latent or chronic MTB infection.

Tubercle bacilli have also been shown to survive prolonged chemotherapy in humans (Hobby, Auerbach, Lenert, *et al.*, 1954; van Rie, Warren, Richardson, *et al.*, 1999; Wayne and Salkin, 1956). However, the striking feature of MTB is its ability to persist for many years without causing disease in untreated individuals (Lillebaek, Dirksen, Baess, *et al.*, 2002). The immune mechanisms that prevent active TB in the majority of infected individuals are unknown. MTB-specific $CD4^{+}$T-cells (Pathan, Wilkinson, Klenerman, *et al.*, 2001; Ulrichs, Moody, Grant, *et al.*, 2003), $CD8^{+}$T-cells (Pathan, Wilkinson, Wilkinson, *et al.*, 2000) and $CD4^{-}CD8^{-}$ T-cells (Stenger, Mazzaccaro, Uyemura, *et al.*, 1997) have been documented in peripheral blood of PPD-positive persons and household contacts of TB patients, and are likely to contribute to protection against TB. As in mice, immune suppression as a result of glucocorticosteroids administration, TNF-α neutralizing mAbs (Keane, Gershon, Wise, *et al.*, 2001), or HIV-induced $CD4^{+}$T-cell depletion (Daley, Small, Schecter, *et al.*, 1992; Di Perri, Cruciani, Danzi, *et al.*, 1989) is associated with increased rates of reactivation of latent MTB infection.

University of Cape Town

1.6 TB – OUTCOME OF THE HOST-PATHOGEN INTERACTION

Whether an infected person contains the infection, or develops progressive primary disease or reactivation TB will depend on many host, pathogen and environmental factors. Host genetic polymorphism may confer susceptibility or resistance to TB, and factors such as nutritional status, age-related immune dysfunction and co-morbidity may impair the ability to contain the bacilli. Virulence determinants of the MTB strain and size of the inhaled inoculum size may further influence the risk of developing TB.

Host susceptibility to TB. Apart from the major genetic defects in the IL-12 – IFN-γ pathway that result in severe susceptibility to overwhelming (chiefly atypical) mycobacterial infections, several polymorphisms have been identified that confer susceptibility to or protection against TB. *NRAMP1* (*SLC11A1*) polymorphism has been associated with susceptibility to TB in West Africans (Bellamy, Ruwende, Corrah, *et al.*, 1998; Cervino, Lakiss, Sow, *et al.*, 2000). Macrophage IL-10 production was enhanced in donors with susceptible *NRAMP1* genotypes (Awomoyi, Marchant, Howson, *et al.*, 2002) and in TB patients with persistent skin anergy. These patients appeared to have impaired resistance against MTB, as suggested by an increased number of deaths and episodes of recurrent TB, as well as reduced T-cell proliferative responses and impaired antigen-specific IL-2 and IFN-γ production to MTB antigens (Delgado, Tsai, Thim, *et al.*, 2002).

Associations between genetic polymorphisms and susceptibility to TB may be population specific. For instance, *NRAMP1* alleles that were associated with susceptibility to TB in Gambians were associated with resistance against TB in Cambodians and not associated with TB in Taiwanese (Delgado, Baena, Thim, *et al.*, 2002). *NRAMP1* polymorphisms in Danish TB patients were not associated with susceptibility to TB per se, but with sputum smear positive disease. Since the *NRAMP1*-encoded protein is present on the membranes of phagolysosomes within macrophages, *NRAMP1* polymorphisms might co-determine the ability of these cells to inhibit mycobacterial replication and the extent of clinical disease (Soborg, Andersen, Madsen, *et al.*, 2002).

In accordance with the observation that vitamin D inhibits the growth of MTB in human macrophages (Crowle and Elkins, 1990; Rook, Steele, Fraher, *et al.*, 1986), low serum vitamin D levels were associated with enhanced susceptibility to TB (Wilkinson, Llewelyn, Toossi, *et al.*, 2000), and specific vitamin D receptor polymorphisms with protection against TB (Bellamy, Ruwende, Corrah, *et al.*, 1999). An association between class II HLA

University of Cape Town

genotypes and susceptibility to or protection against TB has been observed in some populations (Bothamley, Beck, Schreuder, *et al.*, 1989; Goldfeld, Delgado, Thim, *et al.*, 1998; Ravikumar, Dheenadhayalan, Rajaram, *et al.*, 1999).

Despite the importance of cytokines in determining host resistance against MTB, few consistent associations between polymorphisms of genes encoding these proteins or their receptors and active TB have been reported (Bellamy, Ruwende, Corrah, *et al.*, 1998; Delgado, Baena, Thim, *et al.*, 2002; Goldfeld, Delgado, Thim, *et al.*, 1998; Wilkinson, Patel, Llewelyn, *et al.*, 1999). Nonetheless, persons latently infected with MTB, in whom the immune response contains MTB infection, have a significantly higher number of IFN-γ secreting $CD4^+$ T cells, and respond with increased IFN-γ production in response to MTB specific antigens (Pathan, Wilkinson, Klenerman, *et al.*, 2001; Ulrichs, Moody, Grant, *et al.*, 2003; Vankayalapati, Wizel, Weis, *et al.*, 2003; Vekemans, Lienhardt, Sillah, *et al.*, 2001). Most recently, a polymorphism in the gene for IFN-γ was found to be associated with TB in South Africans (Rossouw, Nel, Cooke, *et al.*, 2003).

Virulence factors and adaptive responses of MTB. The success of MTB as a pathogen relates to its ability to replicate within host macrophages, to resist elimination by the host immune response, and to persist in a relatively inactive state while retaining the potential for reactivation years after infection (Glickman and Jacobs, 2001). MTB has developed "virulence" mechanisms that enable the bacilli to interfere with the establishment of an efficient T_H1 response, including the ability to inhibit macrophage IL-12, IL-15 and IL-18 production (Nau, Richmond, Schlesinger, *et al.*, 2002; Nigou, Zelle-Rieser, Gilleron, *et al.*, 2001; Vankayalapati, Wizel, Weis, *et al.*, 2003), IFN-γ induced transcriptional responses (Ting, Kim, Cattamanchi, *et al.*, 1999), CD1 and MHC class II expression (Giuliani, Prete, Graziani, *et al.*, 2001; Noss, Pai, Sellati, *et al.*, 2001) and TLR mediated signaling (Means, Lien, Yoshimura, *et al.*, 1999). In addition, MTB infection may result in impaired DC

University of Cape Town

maturation (Geijtenbeek, Van Vliet, Koppel, *et al.*, 2003) or production of immune inhibitory cytokines (IL-10 and TGFβ) (Geijtenbeek, Van Vliet, Koppel, *et al.*, 2003; Hirsch, Toossi, Othieno, *et al.*, 1999). Susceptibility to MTB may thus be a reflection of a reduced ability of the host to overcome these pathogen specific impairments of T_H1 immunity.

The MTB cell wall contains a large number of lipids, glycolipids and polysaccharides that are likely to be involved in pathogenesis (Cole, Brosch, Parkhill, *et al.*, 1998; Dubnau, Chan, Raynaud, *et al.*, 2000; Glickman, Cox and Jacobs, 2000). Some of these lipids and proteins, including the 19kDa lipoprotein, are exported from the phagolysosome to the cytoplasm (Beatty, Rhoades, Ullrich, *et al.*, 2000; Berthet, Lagranderie, Gounon, *et al.*, 1998; Neyrolles, Gould, Gares, *et al.*, 2001), where they may affect host cell functions. Others, such as the cell wall associated lipid phthiocerol dimycocerosate or the 52 kDa cell surface protein encoded by the *mce1* gene appear to be required for organ specific replication or invasion of non-phagocytic cells and survival within human macrophages (Arruda, Bomfim, Knights, *et al.*, 1993; Cox, Chen, McNeil, *et al.*, 1999; Tekaia, Gordon, Garnier, *et al.*, 1999), while antigens such as the Ag 85B may be dispensable for replication yet important for eliciting immunopathology, a requirement for bacillary transmission in man (Armitige, Jagannath, Wanger, *et al.*, 2000; Baldwin, D'Souza, Roberts, *et al.*, 1998; Wilkinson, DesJardin, Islam, *et al.*, 2001).

University of Cape Town

Another set of potential MTB virulence factors, including the exported repetitive protein (Berthet, Lagranderie, Gounon, *et al.*, 1998), the 16 kDa alpha crystalline protein (Yuan, Crane, Simpson, *et al.*, 1998), a cluster of genes involved in lipid metabolism, phthiocerol, phenolphthiocerol and phtiocerol dimycocerosate biosynthesis (Cox, Chen, McNeil, *et al.*, 1999) and siderophore production (De Voss, Rutter, Schroeder, *et al.*, 2000), a putative polyketide synthase, a PPE family protein (Camacho, Ensergueix, Perez, *et al.*, 1999), and the enzyme glutamine synthase (Tullius, Harth and Horwitz, 2003) are required

for growth in macrophages or mouse lungs, and expression of a heparin binding haemagglutinin by MTB may facilitate early dissemination from the airways to other organs (Pethe, Alonso, Biet, *et al.*, 2001).

Approximately 10% of the MTB genome encodes 2 families of unrelated, glycine rich (PE and PPE) proteins. These could potentially represent a source of antigenic variation, interfere with immune responses by inhibiting antigen processing, or serve as an asparagine storage reservoir for the bacilli (Cole, Brosch, Parkhill, *et al.*, 1998; Tekaia, Gordon, Garnier, *et al.*, 1999). In addition, granuloma-specific expression of members of the PE/PE-PGRS family by *M. marinum* suggests a possible role for these proteins in mycobacterial persistence (Ramakrishnan, Federspiel and Falkow, 2000).

Mycobacteria in stationary phase broth culture and murine lungs use fatty acids as a carbon source (Primm, Andersen, Mizrahi, *et al.*, 2000; Segal and Bloch, 1956). Fatty acid catabolism requires the use of two metabolic pathways: the β-oxidation cycle and the glyoxylate shunt (Honer Zu Bentrup, Miczak, Swenson, *et al.*, 1999). MTB mutants deficient for isocitrate lyase (ICL) were impaired in their ability to resist elimination by the murine host immune response, suggesting an important role for fatty acid metabolism im mycobacterial persistence (McKinney, Honer zu Bentrup, Munoz-Elias, *et al.*, 2000). The expression of ICL by MTB within granulomas of patients with TB suggests that similar metabolic adaptation of MTB may be required for persistence in the human lung (Fenhalls, Stevens, Moses, *et al.*, 2002). The importance of fatty acid metabolism to MTB is underscored by the identification of some 250 regulatory enzymes (Cole, Brosch, Parkhill, *et al.*, 1998), several of which are upregulated following phagocytosis by macrophages (Dubnau, Fontan, Manganelli, *et al.*, 2002).

Adaptive responses to changes in the environment, including exposure to the host immune response, require extensive gene regulation (Shi, Jung, Tyagi, *et al.*, 2003). An

University of Cape Town

important family of gene transcriptional regulators is the alternate RNA polymerase sigma factors (Cole, Brosch, Parkhill, *et al.*, 1998; Collins, Kawakami, de Lisle, *et al.*, 1995; DeMaio, Zhang, Ko, *et al.*, 1996; Graham and Clark-Curtiss, 1999; Kaushal, Schroeder, Tyagi, *et al.*, 2002). The large numbers of genes required for the various adaptative responses could all be considered "virulence factors" (Barry, 2001). More constructively, the interaction between *M. tuberculosis* and the mammalian host could be seen as a dynamic interplay between bacterial adaptive responses and host defense mechanisms. In man, this interaction may result in the following outcomes: progressive primary infection, latency or reactivation disease.

1.7 MOLECULAR EPIDEMIOLOGY – THE IDENTIFICATION OF CLINICAL OUTBREAK STRAINS

DNA fingerprinting (also known as restriction fragment length polymorphism or RFLP) of MTB strains has offered revolutionary insights into the epidemiology of tuberculosis, and allowed the identification of MTB strains or families of related strains. Studies from San Francisco and New York City that employed this technique demonstrated that reactivation of latent disease was less common than hitherto assumed (Alland, Kalkut, Moss, *et al.*, 1994; Small, Hopewell, Singh, *et al.*, 1994). In these cities, the isolates from 30-40% of patients were clustered, suggesting that TB in these patients had arisen from recently transmitted MTB infection. Importantly, conventional contact tracing had identified connections in only 10% of clustered cases linked by RFLP analysis (Small, Hopewell, Singh, *et al.*, 1994). In New York City, drug resistant TB, until then considered to be the result of poor compliance with therapy, was shown to be due to (recent) transmission of drug resistant strains in two-thirds of cases (Alland, Kalkut, Moss, *et al.*, 1994). Other patients developed MDR TB from a new, drug resistant strain while undergoing treatment for drug susceptible TB (Small,

University of Cape Town

Shafer, Hopewell, *et al.*, 1993). These findings had major implications for tuberculosis control strategies, with a shift of emphasis from preventive therapy in exposed individuals to interruption of transmission by early case identification and limitation of institutional spread (Alland, Kalkut, Moss, *et al.*, 1994; Daley, Small, Schecter, *et al.*, 1992; Small, Hopewell, Singh, *et al.*, 1994; Small, Shafer, Hopewell, *et al.*, 1993). Consequently, the rates of drug-resistant TB have dropped and MDR TB is no longer associated with recent transmission (Geng, Kreiswirth, Driver, *et al.*, 2002).

RFLP has been used to document outbreaks of TB (Bifani, Plikaytis, Kapur, *et al.*, 1996; Frieden, Sherman, Maw, *et al.*, 1996; van Rie, Warren, Beyers, *et al.*, 1999), and to estimate the risk of MTB transmission. Of interest, in San Francisco, 17% of all TB cases had arisen from smear-negative source cases. The relative risk of MTB transmission from smear-negative cases was 0.22 compared to transmission from smear-positive cases. In TB endemic, resource-poor countries however, MTB transmission from smear-negative cases may be considerably higher since these patients are missed by smear-based diagnosis and therefore may remain infectious for longer periods (Behr, Warren, Salamon, *et al.*, 1999).

University of Cape Town

In many parts of the developing world, TB case rates have reached "epidemic" levels. In such circumstances, it is to be expected that TB is predominantly the result of recently transmitted MTB infection. Surprisingly, an RFLP study from South Africa, performed in a largely HIV negative community with TB incidence rates of over 1% (2% in young adults and 3% in subsets of the community) revealed that reactivation of latent disease was the principal mode of developing TB in adults (Warren, Hauman, Beyers, *et al.*, 1996). However, when a wider definition of genotypic clustering was used, over 85% of TB was considered to have arisen from recent MTB transmission (van der Spuy, Warren, Richardson, *et al.*, 2001). In addition, two thirds of the MDR-TB cases had arisen from recently transmitted infection (Van Rie, Warren, Richardson, *et al.*, 2000; Warren, Hauman, Beyers, *et al.*, 1996), and most

(12 of 16) episodes of recurrent TB in HIV negative individuals after curative treatment were the result of exogenous re-infection (van Rie, Warren, Richardson, *et al.*, 1999).

Apart from providing an opportunity to identify outbreaks and transmission patterns of TB, RFLP has also allowed classification of MTB isolates into families of genotypically related strains. Specific isolates have been studied for their immunologic characteristics or genetic properties. For instance, a strain (CDC1551) that caused an outbreak of TB in the Mid-West of the USA in the 1990's was noted to have given rise to unusually strong delayed-type hypersensitivity skin reactions in infected persons (Valway, Sanchez, Shinnick, *et al.*, 1998). The CDC1551 strain was also shown to have reduced virulence in rabbits (Bishai, Dannenberg, Parrish, *et al.*, 1999) and in mice (Manca, Tsenova, Barry, *et al.*, 1999). Compared to H37Rv, CDC1551 induced increased levels of IL-12 and TNF-α, which resulted in earlier control of mycobacterial growth. Increased pro-inflammatory cytokine production was also observed in human monocytes infected with CDC1551 *in vitro*, and together with the enhanced skin test reactions, suggest that this strain may be highly immunogenic (Manca, Tsenova, Barry, *et al.*, 1999).

Another clinical outbreak strain, HN878 (Sreevatsan, Pan, Stockbauer, *et al.*, 1997), was shown to be hypervirulent in mice. Infection with this strain resulted in reduced IL-12 and TNF-α production, increased bacterial counts in the lungs, and markedly impaired survival of infected animals (Manca, Tsenova, Bergtold, *et al.*, 2001). It is interesting to note that HN878 belongs to the W-Beijing family of MTB isolates, related strains with a worldwide distribution and particularly high prevalence in Asia. Faster replication in human macrophages has been reported for members of the W-Beijing family (Li, Whalen, Albert, *et al.*, 2002; Zhang, Gong, Yang, *et al.*, 1999). These observations underscore the notion that these strains may have an as yet unidentified genetic advantage to cause disease in humans (Bifani, Mathema, Kurepina, *et al.*, 2002).

University of Cape Town

1.8 TB TREATMENT, ACTION OF TB DRUGS AND MECHANISMS OF DRUG RESISTANCE

Prior to the availability of chemotherapeutic agents, bed rest in sanatoria and lung collaps were readily administered with "good" success (patients not infrequently became sputum smear negative as long as they refrained from physical activity). Not infrequently, diseased lung was surgically removed in an attempt to remove residual tubercle bacilli. Despite these attempts at cure, TB in 1947 was associated with 21% one-year mortality, whereas 54% of patients remained sputum positive and 25% became sputum negative. Following introduction of streptomycin and para-amino salicylic acid (PAS), mortality was reduced to 3%, 32% remained sputum positive and 65% became non-infectious (Ferebee and Palmer, 1965).

With the availability of more potent bactericidal agents including pyrazinamide (PZA, Z), isoniazid (INH, H) and rifampicin (rifampin, RIF, R), trials were commenced to evaluate the efficacy of short course (6 months) treatment. Regimens that contained RHZ were well tolerated, highly efficacious, and bacteriological relapses were infrequent (1972; 1973; 1974; 1974). RHZ achieved rapid bactericidal activity *in vivo*, with an approximate 25-fold fall in sputum colony counts over the first 2 days, a further 10-fold decrease over the next 7 days, and another 1 log reduction over the next 20 days (Jindani, Aber, Edwards, *et al.*, 1980). A six months regimen consisting of RHZ combined with ethambutol (EMB) for the first 2 months, followed by 4 months of RH, became the standard "short course chemotherapy" for tuberculosis (1981; 1981; 1982; 1982). To facilitate direct supervision of therapy, daily RH therapy may be substituted with twice weekly RH, or, in the absence of cavitation, with weekly rifapentine/isoniazid in the continuation phase (Benator, Bhattacharya, Bozeman, *et al.*, 2002; Perriens, St Louis, Mukadi, *et al.*, 1995). Addition of drugs with superior activity against non-replicating bacilli, such as a recently described nitroimidazopyran, to current treatment regimens could result in more rapid sterilization of necrotic granulomas and

University of Cape Town

allowing a further reduction of the treatment duration (Stover, Warrener, VanDevanter, *et al.*, 2000). Adjuvant immunotherapy with *M. vaccae* did not result in improved cure or relapse rates in TB patients treated with short-course chemotherapy (1999; Johnson, Kamya, Okwera, *et al.*, 2000; Mwinga, Nunn, Ngwira, *et al.*, 2002).

As discussed earlier, fatty acid metabolism is extremely important to the mycobacterium. Fatty acid synthesis requires the action of 2 key enzymes, fatty acid synthase-1 (FAS-I), which catalyzes the conversion of Acetyl-CoA to 16-24-carbon fatty acids, and FAS-II, which adds additional acetyl-CoA units to form meromycolates (fatty acids containing more than 50 carbon atoms) that can be modified into mycolic acids. Several tuberculostatics inhibit fatty acid synthesis by targeting these enzymes. PZA, a nicotinamide analogue and a pro-drug that is converted by mycobacterial pyrazinamidase to pyrazinoic acid, inhibits FAS-I (Zimhony, Cox, Welch, *et al.*, 2000). Isoniazid and ethionamide both target the enoyl-ACP reductase (*inhA*) (Banerjee, Dubnau, Quemard, *et al.*, 1994) component of FAS-II (Draper, 2000), and β-ketoacyl ACP synthase (*kasA*) (Mdluli, Slayden, Zhu, *et al.*, 1998). Resistance to PZA may be caused by mutations in *pncA*, the gene encoding pyrazinamidase, and resistance to INH may result from reduced oxidation of this pro-drug by mycobacterial catalase peroxidase due to *katG* mutations (Zhang, Heym, Allen, *et al.*, 1992). INH resistance may also be caused by overexpression of *inhA* (Larsen, Vilcheze, Kremer, *et al.*, 2002). Ethionamide does not require intracellular oxidation; resistance to this drug as well as to isoniazid may result from mutations in enoyl-ACP reductase and/or β-ketoacyl ACP synthase.

Rifampin and streptomycin are translational inhibitors. Rifampin disrupts mRNA synthesis by binding to the RNA polymerase β subunit (*rpoB*) (Telenti, Imboden, Marchesi, *et al.*, 1993), and streptomycin inhibits bacterial protein synthesis through binding to the 16S rRNA (*rrs*) and S12 ribosomal protein (*rpsL*) (Finken, Kirschner, Meier, *et al.*, 1993).

University of Cape Town

Meier, *et al.*, 1993). Fluoroquinolones inhibit mycobacterial DNA synthesis by binding to DNA gyrase (*gyrAB*) (Drlica, Xu, Wang, *et al.*, 1996). Resistance to each of these drugs is conferred by single nucleotide substitutions in the target genes.

Ethambutol, a first line tuberculostatic, inhibits cell wall arabinogalactam synthesis. Resistance to EMB is caused by overexpression of its target arabinosyltransferase, or by mutations in the *embAB* gene encoding this enzyme (Belanger, Besra, Ford, *et al.*, 1996). Cycloserine targets cell wall peptidoglycan synthesis by inhibition of the enzymes d-alanyl, d-alanine ligase (*ddlA*) (David, Takayama and Goldman, 1969) and alanine racemase (*alr*) (Caceres, Harris, Wellehan, *et al.*, 1997), whereas PAS is a weak inhibitor of mycobacterial folic acid synthesis (Nopponpunth, Sirawaraporn, Greene, *et al.*, 1999).

In most bacterial species, drug resistance mutations result in reduced fitness of the strain. Drug pressure results in selection of drug resistant mutants by inhibiting the growth of susceptible bacilli. Following withdrawal of drug pressure, 'wild' type bacilli are able to outgrow resistant bacilli and become predominant. In contrast, cessation of drug pressure in patients with drug resistant TB does not result in the disappearance of resistant isolates, raising the possibility that resistant MTB isolates may be no less fit than pan-susceptible isolates. Indeed, a recent study revealed that MTB isolates harboring the *katG* S315T mutation grew similarly in mice as isogenic bacilli that lacked this mutation (Pym, Saint-Joanis and Cole, 2002). In addition, the *rpoB* S531L and *rpsL* mutations were not associated with reduced fitness (Cohen, Sommers and Murray, 2003). Whereas cluster studies in several populations have suggested that MDR strains may be less, equally or more transmissible than drug susceptible isolates, household studies have shown that MDR strains gave rise to similar rates of skin test conversion and clinical TB as drug susceptible strains (Snider, Kelly, Cauthen, *et al.*, 1985; Teixeira, Perkins, Johnson, *et al.*, 2001).

University of Cape Town

Interestingly, a recent study suggested that MTB may posess mechanisms to promote mutagenesis. The *dnaE2* gene that encodes an error-prone DNA polymerase was shown to be upregulated when cellular replication was arrested as a result of unrepaired DNA damage. Upregulation of *dnaE2* was also observed in bacilli obtained from the organs of infected mice following adaptive immunity. Bacilli in which *dnaE2* had been deleted were less virulent, and developed fewer *rpoB* resistance mutations following exposure to rifampin *in vivo*. Induction of error-prone DNA polymerases *in vivo* may thus contribute to the observed increased rate of drug resistance mutants in humans with TB relative to their predicted frequency based on stochastic mutation rates *in vitro*. Generation of mutants may be a strategy that MTB has developed to adapt to the stresses of host immunity and TB therapy (Boshoff, Reed, Barry, *et al.*, 2003).

1.9 TB CONTROL AND PREVENTION

As of 1995, the DOTS strategy has been proposed by the World Health Organization as one of the ways to reduce the burden of TB. DOTS "direct observation of therapy – short course" indicates that patients worldwide should be treated with optimal – rifampin containing – short course chemotherapy. The supervised aspect attempts to address the issue that a substantial number of patients interrupt treatment, largely because they feel physically much improved after the first few weeks of therapy. However, the concept of DOTS stretches well beyond this and includes government commitment, diagnosis by smear microscopy, reliable drug supply, and standardized recording and reporting of treatment outcomes (Nunn, 2001).

The potential to identify individuals who are latently infected with MTB, and who are thus at risk of reactivation TB later in life, affords the opportunity to administer prophylactic TB treatment (Jasmer, Nahid and Hopewell, 2002). In low prevalence countries, treatment of PPD-positive persons with isoniazid results in at least 50% reduction of the risk of

University of Cape Town

developing active TB. Consequently, this intervention is frequently used to limit the burden of active disease (1992; Ferebee, 1970).

Many of the countries in sub-Saharan Africa with a high TB burden also have high rates of HIV infection. HIV infected persons who are latently infected with MTB are at increased risk of developing TB and may thus benefit from chemoprophylaxis. In non-anergic, tuberculin skin test positive (>5 mm) HIV infected persons, 6-12 months of isoniazid, or three months of isoniazid-rifampin, reduces the risk of active TB by 60-83% (Pape, Jean, Ho, *et al.*, 1993; Whalen, Johnson, Okwera, *et al.*, 1997). The logistics associated with voluntary counseling and HIV-testing, and the difficulty of excluding active TB in patients with HIV infection in rural settings, however, make it unlikely that chemoprophylaxis will have a significant impact on the burden of tuberculosis in sub-Saharan Africa (Aisu, Raviglione, van Praag, *et al.*, 1995). More prolonged (12 months) treatment of patients with active TB, and secondary INH prophylaxis following treatment, are effective ways to reduce the number of relapses but fail to improve survival (Fitzgerald, Desvarieux, Severe, *et al.*, 2000; Perriens, St Louis, Mukadi, *et al.*, 1995).

The current vaccine used against TB, BCG, was obtained by repeated passaging of the bovine tubercle bacillus in the presence of bile. By 1921, after thirteen years and 230 passages, the *M. bovis* strain had become highly attenuated and could be safely administered to a variety of animal species as well as humans. Further passaging in laboratories around the world yielded a number of genetically distinct BCG strains, most of which have been used as vaccines given to billions of people in an attempt to prevent TB (Behr, 2002; Behr, Wilson, Gill, *et al.*, 1999). BCG vaccination induces a T_H1 response characterized by antigen-specific, IFN-γ producing, memory T cells (Black, Weir, Floyd, *et al.*, 2002; Marchant, Goetghebuer, Ota, *et al.*, 1999; Ravn, Boesen, Pedersen, *et al.*, 1997). When mice are vaccinated with BCG and then infected with MTB by aerosol, an accelerated recruitment of activated, IFN-γ

University of Cape Town

producing lymphocytes to the lungs is observed. This is associated with reduced tissue mycobacterial loads compared to non-vaccinated animals, but the bacilli are not eliminated (Silva, Bonato, Lima, *et al.*, 1999).

In man, BCG vaccination results in an approximate 50% reduced risk of developing tuberculosis, particularly childhood disease at extra pulmonary sites. Unfortunately, there appears to be minimal, if any, or even negative benefit with regards to the prevention of adult pulmonary tuberculosis (Fine, 2001). The efficacy of BCG is least in the tropical developing world, where sensitization due to environmental mycobacteria may be more common (Black, Weir, Floyd, *et al.*, 2002; Colditz, Brewer, Berkey, *et al.*, 1994; Rodrigues, Diwan and Wheeler, 1993). Despite almost universal BCG vaccination at birth, annual notification rates in 0-4 year olds have risen sharply between 1970 and 1996 in areas where TB is endemic (Enarson, Beyers and Zhang, 2001). Inadequate protective efficacy and a small risk of disseminated BCG infection when the vaccine is given to immune compromised neonates (Altare, Lammas, Revy, *et al.*, 1998; Jouanguy, Altare, Lamhamedi, *et al.*, 1996) has resulted in a search for new vaccine candidates.

University of Cape Town

MTB vaccine development has rendered several candidates, including subunit vaccines, whole bacterial vaccines, and combination vaccine strategies. Among the subunit vaccines, both DNA encoding MTB antigen 85A (Ag 85A) and DNA encoding heat shock protein 65 (HSP 65) have afforded mouse protection against MTB challenge comparable to BCG (Huygen, Content, Denis, *et al.*, 1996; Tascon, Colston, Ragno, *et al.*, 1996). The HSP 65 DNA vaccine was also effective in reducing bacterial loads and improving survival of mice when administered several weeks post infection (Lowrie, Tascon, Bonato, *et al.*, 1999). Another subunit vaccine candidate is the early secreted antigenic target of 6 kDa (ESAT-6). This antigen is recognized by T-cells from patients with TB and experimentally infected guineapigs (Elhay, Oettinger and Andersen, 1998; Ravn, Demissie, Eguale, *et al.*, 1999), and

is capable of inducing high levels of protective immunity (Brandt, Elhay, Rosenkrands, *et al.*, 2000). The use of subunit vaccines has resulted in severe lung damage in mice and guinea pigs challenged with MTB by aerosol (Baldwin, D'Souza, Roberts, *et al.*, 1998; Taylor, Turner, Basaraba, *et al.*, 2003; Turner, Roberts, Frank, *et al.*, 2000), implying that the safety of these vaccines will have to be carefully monitored.

Among the whole cell vaccines, auxotroph mutants have been developed as a safe alternative to BCG. These highly attenuated BCG or MTB strains are unable to replicate in host tissue (Camacho, Ensergueix, Perez, *et al.*, 1999; Cox, Chen, McNeil, *et al.*, 1999; Jackson, Phalen, Lagranderie, *et al.*, 1999), and may induce protective responses against MTB (Guleria, Teitelbaum, McAdam, *et al.*, 1996; Sambandamurthy, Wang, Chen, *et al.*, 2002). Enhanced protective efficacy of BCG was observed when it was co-administered with IL-12, or when BCG was made to express the MTB 30 kDa major secretory protein (Ag 85B) or secrete the ESAT-6 and the 10kDa culture filtrate protein (CFP-10). MTB challenge mice had up to 0.5-1 log reduced organ bacterial loads compared to BCG vaccinated mice (Freidag, Melton, Collins, *et al.*, 2000; Horwitz, Harth, Dillon, *et al.*, 2000; Pym, Brodin, Majlessi, *et al.*, 2003).

Combination vaccines utilize a prime-boost strategy. A recently developed candidate uses BCG to prime immunity and Ag 85A (expressed in modified vaccinia Ankara or recombinant pox virus) to boost this immune response. This strategy has resulted in induction of IFN-γ secreting, MTB specific T-cells in healthy volunteers, and protective efficacy in populations at risk of TB is currently under evaluation.

1.10 STUDIES OF THE HOST-PATHOGEN INTERACTION

This thesis contains five studies. In chapters 3-5, the interaction between related yet distinct mycobacterial strains and human or mouse mononuclear phagocytes *in vitro* is examined.

University of Cape Town

Monocytes and MDM from healthy subjects and patients with TB, and peritoneal macrophages from immune competent and gene deficient mice, are infected in parallel with H37Ra and H37Rv, *M. smegmatis* and *M. smegmatis* 19kDa, or CDC1551 and HN878. The ability of these cells to control the growth of these mycobacterial isolates, as well as the production of immune regulatory cytokines in response to the infection is examined. The extent to which mycobacterial strain diversity and bacillary heterogeneity are encountered in human TB is examined in chapters 6-7. Mycobacteria obtained from different tuberculous lung lesions and serial sputum cultures of patients with chronic, therapy-refractory TB are characterized by RFLP fingerprint and sequence analysis of the genetic targets of anti-tuberculous chemotherapy. In addition, a detailed histological, immunohistochemical and molecular analysis of the host-pathogen interaction at the site of disease is presented.

University of Cape Town

Chapter 2

GENERAL METHODS

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

The studies presented in this thesis examine the interaction between *M. tuberculosis* (MTB) and human host, both *in vivo* and *in vitro*, and between MTB and mouse macrophages *in vitro*. A description of the TB patients enrolled, as well as the cell biologic, immunologic and microbiologic methods employed in these studies, is presented below. The methodology is divided in human, mouse, and mycobacterial studies.

2.1 STUDIES OF HUMAN SUBJECTS AND HUMAN PHAGOCYTES

2.1.1 Human subjects

Patients. Seventeen HIV-negative patients with active pulmonary tuberculosis (TB) were enrolled for the study presented in chapter 5. These patients were recruited from the Chapel Street TB clinic in Woodstock or Brooklyn Chest Hospital, a 350-bed inpatient TB treatment facility. All patients were South African of Coloured or Black ethnicity and tended to come from under-privileged backgrounds where joblessness and alcohol abuse are common. All patients were sputum smear and culture positive for MTB. None of the patients had specific risk factors for TB such as drug-induced immune suppression or diabetes mellitus, and none of the female patients was pregnant. Patients with prior TB treatment were excluded from this study. At the time of sampling, none of the patients had received more than 4 weeks of rifampin-based short course chemotherapy.

Six patients who underwent pneumonectomy for the complications of TB at Groote Schuur Hospital between January 2000 and December 2001 were studied in chapter 6. All patients had unilateral lung disease with (almost) complete destruction of the affected lung. Three patients (two of whom had MDR-TB) underwent surgery for chronic, sputum positive TB despite 18-24 months of supervised multi-drug therapy. The three patients who were culture negative at the time of surgery all had a history of pulmonary tuberculosis. These patients had presented with hemoptysis and other symptoms suggestive of relapse, and had

University of Cape Town

received empirical treatment for TB for 7-15 months. Sputum cultures from these three patients at the time of presentation, however, failed to yield MTB. Lung resection in these patients was performed to relieve ongoing hemoptysis thought to have arisen from a focus in the destroyed lung. All patients received TB therapy up until the time of surgery, and none of the patients was co-infected with HIV.

Thirteen HIV-negative patients with chronic, active MDR-TB despite at least 12 (mean of 36, range 12-77) months of optimized chemotherapy were studied in chapter 7. These patients comprised the entire South African subset of a multinational, randomized, placebo controlled study to evaluate the role of aerosolized recombinant human interferon-gamma (rhuIFN-γ, InterMune, Brisbane, CA, USA) as an adjunct to chemotherapy in patients with MDR-TB (Condos, Rom and Schluger, 1997). All 13 patients had initially received treatment for drug susceptible TB; this was substituted for individualized drug regimens based on the results of phenotypic drug susceptibility tests once MDR-TB was diagnosed. Drug susceptibility had been evaluated every 2-3 months, and treatment regimens adjusted accordingly at approximately 6 monthly intervals. All patients were sputum smear and culture positive at the time of enrollment into the study, and continued to excrete bacilli in their sputum throughout the study.

Control subjects. Healthy volunteers were used as blood donors in Cape Town and New York (chapters 3 and 4). In addition, buffy coats were obtained from the New York Blood Transfusion Service and used as a source of peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC). Only blood from HIV negative persons was used.

Recruitment and consent procedures. All patient studies were performed in Cape Town, South Africa. TB Patients were asked to participate in the studies, and informed both in word and in writing about the study aims and procedures. Participation was voluntary and all patients signed informed consent. A small monetary incentive was offered to compensate

University of Cape Town

for the discomfort of venapuncture to the patients in chapter 5. Healthy blood donors gave written informed consent and received a small payment for each blood donation.

Ethical approval. The Ethics Committee of the University of Cape Town and the Institutional Review Boards of The Rockefeller University and the University of Medicine and Dentistry of New Jersey approved all studies involving human subjects.

2.1.2 Clinical specimen obtained from TB patients

Blood. Ten ml of venous EDTA-blood was obtained from patients with active TB for plasma cytokine analysis and centrifuged at 800x*g* for 4 minutes. Plasma was removed and stored in aliquots at -70°C for cytokine analysis. PBMC were isolated from 60 ml of venous blood collected in heparinized syringes (approximately 3 hours after the administration of the morning dose of TB chemotherapy). Blood was layered on lymphocyte separation medium (Ficoll Hypaque, Pharmacia, Uppsala, Sweden) and centrifuged at 400x*g* for 25 minutes. PBMC were harvested from the gradient, washed twice in cold RPMI 1640 (Gibco BRL, Gaithersburg, MD) enriched with 1% human AB serum (Gemini Bio Products, Calabasas, CA) (R1), and kept on ice until use. Flowcytometry (FACScan, Becton Dickinson) was used to calculate the monocyte fraction of PBMC.

Lung tissue. Surgically removed lungs were taken immediately to the BSL-3 laboratory for dissection in a laminar flow hood. Samples from various lesions and macroscopically normal tissue were obtained for histology (immersed in formalin), for mRNA analysis (snap frozen in liquid nitrogen), and for mycobacterial culture (in a sterile container). Dissection instruments and work surfaces were frequently changed or cleaned to minimize the risk of cross contamination of specimen with mycobacteria from different sites within the lung.

University of Cape Town

Sputum. Sputum samples were obtained at baseline and at multiple time points thereafter. The bacillary load in sputum was determined by counting the number of acid-fast bacilli, using a standardized concentration procedure (incubation with 5% bleach followed by high speed centrifugation) to prepare smears of at least 2 cm^2 that were auramine stained and examined by direct fluorescent-microscopy using 400x magnification. Smears were recorded as having <4, 4-40, >40 bacilli per high power field, and scored 1, 2 or 3 respectively. Each sputum specimen was also cultured in an automated mycobacterial culture system (MGIT, Becton Dickinson, Sparks, MD). Positive cultures were examined by fluorescent microscopy for acid-fast bacilli and by PCR to confirm the presence of MTB (De Wit, Steyn, Shoemaker, *et al.*, 1990).

Phenotypic resistance analysis was performed on the baseline sputum MTB isolates of all 13 patients in chapter 7. Resistance to rifampin (RIF) and isoniazid (INH) was confirmed by growth of the isolates in liquid culture medium containing 2 μg/ml of RIF or 0.1 μg/ml of INH using the radiometric Bactec 460 system (Becton Dickinson). Susceptibility of MTB to other anti-tuberculous agents was determined by the indirect proportion method, using OADC enriched solid 7H10 medium containing critical concentrations of 7.5 μg/ml of ethambutol, 10 μg of streptomycin, 5 μg/ml of kanamycin, 2 μg/ml of ofloxacin, 10 μg/ml of ethionamide or 2 μg/ml of thiacetazone. Phenotypic susceptibility testing for pyrazinamide was not performed, since the results of this test can be difficult to reproduce and may not correlate well with drug susceptibility *in vivo* (Cutler, Wilson, Villarroel, *et al.*, 1997; Hewlett, Horn and Alfalla, 1995). Spacer oligonucleotide genotyping (spoligotyping) was carried out by amplification of the direct repeat region of each isolate. Isolates were assigned a number according to the Centers for Diseases Control (CDC) nomenclature (Mathema, Bifani, Driscoll, *et al.*, 2002). Direct DNA sequencing of the following drug resistance target

University of Cape Town

genes was carried out: *rpoB, katG, inhA, pncA, embB, rpsL, rrs* and *gyrA* (Ramaswamy and Musser, 1998).

Chest radiographs. Pretreatment chest radiographs were classified and scored according to the number of lung zones affected by tuberculosis, the degree of involvement of each zone, and the size of the cavities. The lungs were divided into 6 zones: upper (apex to second rib), middle (second to fourth rib) and lower zones (fourth rib to diaphragm), and scored 0-2 points each for the degree of pulmonary involvement: 0 (uninvolved), 1 (<50% of the lung diseased) or 2 (>50% of the lung involved in the disease process). Cavities were scored 0.25, 0.5 or 1 points if single and measuring <2 cm, 2-4 cm, or >4 cm respectively. Multiple cavities scored 0.5, 1 or 2 points if <2 cm, 2-4 cm, or >4 cm in diameter. The chest radiograph severity score used in chapter 7 thus ranged from 0 to 24 points. In chapter 5, patients were classified as having limited disease if the pulmonary infiltrates confined to the upper lobes and/or apical segments of the lower lobes. Disease was classified as extensive when, in addition to upper zone infiltrates, the radiographs revealed infiltrates in the lower and/or mid-zones.

University of Cape Town

2.1.3 Culture, infection and stimulation of human monocytes *in vitro*

Culture of monocytes. PBMC were plated at a density of $3x10^6$ cells/well in 24 well Falcon tissue culture plates (Becton Dickenson Labware, Lincoln Park, NJ). After 1-2h of incubation at 37°C and under 5% CO_2, non-adherent cells were removed by gently washing the monolayers with warm culture medium. The adherent monocytes were infected immediately, or cultured for up to 7 days to generate monocyte-derived macrophages (MDM). In other experiments, non-adherent monocytes (cultured in Teflon beakers; Savillix, Minnetonka, MN) were obtained from PBMC initially plated on 100 mm Falcon tissue culture dishes (Becton Dickenson Labware, Lincoln Park, NJ). Following removal of non-adherent

lymphocytes, the monocytes were re-incubated for a further 24 h, after which the culture medium was replaced with ice-cold phosphate buffered saline (PBS) (Gibco) containing 0.2% EDTA. The detached monocytes were harvested after 15 minutes, and the remaining adherent cells removed with cell scrapers (Costar, Cambridge, MA). The harvested monocytes were washed, suspended in R20, counted and plated in 24 well plastic plates or in Teflon wells at a density of $3x10^5$ monocytes per well, and then infected (day 1).

***In vitro* infection of human monocytes/MDM with mycobacteria.** Monocytes (approximately $3x10^5$ cells/well) were infected on the day of isolation with MTB strains H37Ra or H37Rv (chapter 3), or with MTB strains CDC1551 or HN878 (chapter 5), or incubated in R10 for 6 days (recombinant *M. smegmatis* experiments, chapter 4) or incubated in R20 for 7 days (H37Ra and H37Rv experiments, chapter 3) prior to infection. The cells were infected by replacing the culture medium with fresh medium containing the mycobacteria at the desired multiplicity of infection (MOI) of 1:1 for MTB and 3:1 for *M. smegmatis*. In the experiments in which adherent and non-adherent monocytes were used, infection was carried out by adding MTB containing medium to the cell culture medium, rather than replacing it. Since MTB was fully phagocytosed by 6h (Laochumroonvorapong, Paul, Manca, *et al.*, 1997), monocyte cultures infected with MTB were not washed after the addition of mycobacteria. The number of viable intracellular bacilli in MTB infected monocytes and MDM was determined on days 1, 2, (and 4) post infection.

M. smegmatis infected cells were pulsed with gentamycin (Gibco) 3h post infection, at a final concentration 200 µg/ml, to inhibit the growth of extra-cellular organisms. At 5h post infection, the culture medium was replaced with fresh R10 medium, without antibiotics. The infection was followed over a 96h time course. Monocyte viability was monitored by trypan blue exclusion in all experiments.

University of Cape Town

***In vitro* stimulation of MDM with purified 19kDa lipoprotein.** The effect of the addition of exogenous recombinant 19kDa lipoprotein on cytokine production by infected monocytes was explored by adding 100-400 ng/mL of mycobacterium-derived 19kDa antigen to the MDM, prior to infection with *M. smegmatis*. The effects of native 19kDa antigen purified from H37Rv (Dr. J. Belisle, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, CO), from recombinant *M. vaccae* 19kDa culture filtrates (rCF) or from recombinant *M.vaccae* 19kDa whole-cell lysate (rWCL; purified from the sonicated bacterial pellet) (Dr. D. B. Young, Imperial College, London, UK)(Abou-Zeid, Gares, Inwald, *et al.*, 1997) were compared. Since only mycobacterium-derived 19kDa protein has undergone post-translational acylation and glycosylation (Abou-Zeid, Gares, Inwald, *et al.*, 1997; Prestidge, Grandison, Chuk, *et al.*, 1995), recombinant 19kDa antigen from mycobacterial and not from an *E. coli* source was used.

2.1.4 Analysis of the host response to TB *in vitro*

Morphology of infected monocytes. Monocytes were cultured on Thermanox cover slips (Nunc, Naperville, IL) for 6 days, and then infected with *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa at an MOI of 5:1. Five hours post infection, the cells were harvested and fixed with 1% glutaraldehyde in 0.1 M sodium cacodylate and 0.1 M dextrose (pH 7.4), post-fixed with 1% osmium tetroxide, stained with 2% uranyl acetate, dehydrated in graded ethanol solutions, and embedded in Epon 812. Thin sections were post-stained with lead citrate and examined with a Jeol JEM 100cx transmission electron microscope.

Enumeration of intracellular mycobacteria. The number of viable organisms in mycobacterium-infected monocytes and MDM was determined. An aliquot of the culture supernatant was removed for cytokine analysis, and the contents of each well expanded with PBS containing 0.25% Tween 80 (Sigma, St Louis, MO) to a volume of 1 ml, probe

University of Cape Town

sonicated for 4 x 5s (3W), and harvested for colony counts. Ten fold serial dilutions of the mycobacterial suspension were plated on 7H11 agar containing glucose (2%) and hygromycin B (50μg/ml), incubated at 37°C, and the number of colony-forming units (CFU) read after 48-72h (*M. smegmatis*), or plated on 7H10 agar containing 10% OADC and read after 2-3 weeks (MTB).

Cytokine analysis. TNF-α, IL-6, IL-12 (p70 and p40) and IL-10 concentrations were measured in the supernatants of infected (and uninfected) macrophages by ELISA (Endogen, Woburn, MA, USA). Briefly, 96 well plates coated with monoclonal antibodies against the relevant cytokine were incubated with 50 μl of culture supernatant and primary antibody for 2h. Following a thorough wash, the wells were incubated with a secondary, fluorochrome labeled monoclonal antibody for 30 minutes. Excess antibody was removed and TMB substrate added to convert the fluorochrome into a blue dye. Another chemical (stop solution) halted this reaction, and rendered the solution yellow proportionate to the amount of cytokine that was originally present in the supernatant. The intensity of the yellow discoloration was measured as an optical density (OD) in an ELISA reader. Cytokine concentrations were calculated from the OD readings plotted against a series of standards. Samples and standards were run in duplicates or triplicates.

Flow cytometric analysis (FACS). Uninfected, *M. smegmatis* and *M. smegmatis* 19kDa infected MDM were harvested 24, 48 and 72h post-infection, using ice cold PBS with 0.02% EDTA (pH 7.2), and washed in FACS buffer (PBS containing 3% fetal calf serum (FCS) (Gemini Bio Products, Calabasas, CA) and 0.1% sodium azide). Macrophages were labeled on ice for 30 minutes with one of the following monoclonal antibodies: phycoerythrin (PE)-anti-CD14, PE-anti-CD80 (B7.1), PE-anti-HLA-DR (Becton Dickinson, San Jose, CA), PE-anti-CD86 (B7.2) or fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC)-anti-CD40 (Pharmingen, San Diego, CA), washed in FACS buffer, and fixed with 1% paraformaldehyde in PBS.

University of Cape Town

T-Lymphocyte proliferation assays. T-lymphocytes ($1x10^5$) from PPD positive donors, enriched by E-rosetting and depleted of monocytes by passage through a nylon wool fiber column (Polysciences Inc., Warrington, PA), were added to *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa infected MDM. Proliferative responses were assayed by [^{3}H]-thymidine (NEN Research Products, Boston, MA) incorporation during the last 6 or 18h of 72-120h cultures. DNA was harvested onto fiber mats with an automatic cell harvester (Skatron Instruments Inc., Sterling, VA), and [^{3}H]-thymidine incorporation measured with a β plate liquid scintillation counter (model LKB 1205; Wallac, Gaithersburg, MD).

2.1.5 Analysis of the human immune response to MTB *in vivo*

Plasma. Cytokine levels were measured in undiluted plasma from TB patients by ELISA, using commercially available cytokine kits (Endogen, Woburn, MA, USA for IL-12, IL-6 and IL-10 and Biosource, Nivelles, Belgium for TNF-α).

Processing of lung tissues. The resected lungs were immediately transferred to the BSL-3 facility for pathological dissection. TB lesions were identified macroscopically; approximately 0.5g of tissue from each lesion were snap frozen in liquid nitrogen for mRNA analysis; another 0.5g from each lesion were homogenized and subjected to prolonged culture (up to 1 year) in mycobacterial growth medium (MGIT, Becton Dickinson, Sparks, MD) and on Lowenstein-Jensen (LJ) slants. The remainder of the lung was immersed in formalin and prepared for microscopic analysis of the selected lesions.

Histology and immune histology of lung tissue. Tissue sections (2μm) were stained with haematoxylin and eosin (H&E) or with carbolfuchsin (Ziehl-Neelsen). The number of mycobacteria in each area of the section was quantified using a 40x objective, as none, scant (individual bacilli found in each granuloma), moderate (1-10 bacilli in each granuloma), or numerous (clumps of more than 10 bacilli found in each granuloma). For

University of Cape Town

immunohistology, additional sections were collected on charged glass slides (Superfrost/Plus, Fisher Scientific, Pittsburgh, PA), de-paraffinized, rehydrated in alcohol and submitted to antigen retrieval by boiling in 0.1 M citrate buffer pH 7.0 (CD3, CD8, CD68 or TIA-1) or in 0.1 M EDTA buffer pH 7.0 (CD4) for 20 min using a microwave oven. The phenotype of the cellular infiltrate in the tissue sections was determined using monoclonal antibodies against a pan T-cell marker CD3 (Ventana Tucson, AZ) at a dilution of 1:100, against the T-cell subsets CD4 (Nova Castra, New Castle upon Tyne, UK) at a dilution of 1:20 and CD8 (Dako, Carpinteria, CA) at a dilution of 1:20, and against the cytotoxic cell marker TIA-1 (Coulter Inc, Hialeah, FL) at a dilution of 1:300. KP1 (CD68) antibody (Dako) was used as a marker of histiocytes/macrophages (dilution 1:500). Reactions were carried out in an automated immunostainer (Ventana) using an immunoperoxidase-diaminobenzidene kit (Ventana) (Siddiqui, Moreira, Negesse, *et al.*, 2002).

Real-time quantitative polymerase chain reaction (PCR) (TaqMan). To evaluate the expression level of the IL-2, IL-12, IFN-γ and iNOS genes in the lung lesions, quantitative RT-PCR was performed with real-time TaqMan technology (Sequence Detection System model 7700, Perkin Elmer Wellesly, MA). Gene specific primers and 6-carboxy-fluorescein (6-FAM) probes were designed using Primer Express software and synthesized by Perkin Elmer. RT-PCR was carried out with the TaqMan RT-PCR core Reagents kit (PE Applied Biosystems, Foster City, CA). Briefly, 5ng of RNA extracted from the lung tissues was reverse transcribed and amplified in TaqMan EZ buffer containing 300 μmol/L dATP, dCTP, and dGTP, 600 μmol/L dUTP, 3 mmol/L manganese acetate, 0.1U/μL DNA polymerase, 0.01 U/μL AmpErase uracil N-glycosylase (UNG), 200 nmol/L of each primer and 100 nmol/L of each detection probe. Thermal cycling conditions were as follows: 2' at 50°C (initial step), 30' at 60°C (reverse transcription), 5' at 95°C (deactivation of UNG), 40 cycles of 15" at 95°C for (denaturation), and 1' at 60°C (annealing and extension).

University of Cape Town

Sequence-specific amplification was detected as 6-FAM fluorescence exceeding the threshold limit (10 times the standard deviation of the baseline) during the amplification cycle. Gene-specific mRNA was quantified using standard curves established from PCR amplifications of serial dilutions of known mRNA levels (serial 10 fold dilutions with 10 to 3.2 ng per reaction well). Amplification of the gene for human acidic ribosomal protein (hARP) was performed on all samples tested to control for variability in the amount of RNA. The quantity of cDNA for each experimental gene was normalized to the amount of hARP in each sample. Levels of gene-specific messages were graphed as normalized message units as determined from the standard curve. A no-template control was included in each amplification reaction to control for contaminating templates. For valid sample analysis the fluorescent intensity in the no-template control was required to be zero.

University of Cape Town

2.1.6 Statistical analysis

The two-tailed Student's *T*-test was used to compare CFU counts, cytokine production and replication times (chapter 3); CFU counts, cytokine concentrations and co-stimulatory molecule expression (chapter 4); number of zones on chest radiograph affected by TB, cytokine concentrations in plasma and culture supernatants, and replication times (chapter 5); and durations of treatment (Chapter 7). The two-tailed Mann-Whitney test was used to compare sputum bacterial loads and chest radiographic scores in chapter 7. *P* values of less than 0.05 were considered statistically significant.

MS Excel (MS Office 2000) was used to draw linear trend lines through logarithmically plotted CFU. Replication times over the 72h or 24h time periods were calculated as follows: [72xlog(2)]/[log(CFUday4)-log(CFUday1)] or [24xlog(2)]/[log(CFUday2)-log(CFUday1)].

2.2 STUDIES OF MTB INFECTED MICE AND MOUSE MACROPHAGES

2.2.1 Mouse strains used for the experiments

Eight to twelve week old C57BL/6 and 129 (wild type) specific pathogen free (SPF) mice were obtained from the University of Cape Town and the University of Medicine and Dentistry of New Jersey animal facilities, and The Jackson Laboratories, Bar Harbor, ME. In addition, 8-12 week old homozygous TNF-α-deficient (TNF-α-KO), interferon-γ (IFN-γ-KO), inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS-KO), TNF-α receptor 1 (p55; TNF-αR1-KO) and TNF-α receptor 2 gene disrupted mice (p75; TNF-αR2-KO) on a C57BL/6 genetic background, and IFN-γ receptor (IFN-γR-KO) deficient mice on a 129 genetic background were obtained from the above institutions and used as a source of peritoneal macrophages. The animal use and care committees at the Rockefeller University, New York, and the University of Cape Town, South Africa approved all protocols involving mice.

2.2.2 Mouse macrophages

Mice were sacrificed by CO_2 narcosis. Resting peritoneal macrophages were obtained by lavage from the peritoneal cavity (Cohn and Benson, 1965). The peritoneum was exposed, and the peritoneal cavity flushed with 4 ml of ice-cold DMEM using a heparinized syringe and a 26-gauge needle. Lavage fluid containing the macrophages was removed with a sterile glass pipette. Peritoneal cells were washed twice with DMEM, and plated in 48 well plates at a density of 10^6 macrophages per well. Monolayers were washed with warm DMEM after 3h to remove non-adherent cells, and incubated in DMEM supplemented with 10% FCS (D10) at 37°C and under 5% CO_2 for an additional 3 days prior to infection. No antibiotics were added to the culture medium at any time during the experiments.

University of Cape Town

2.2.3 Experimental procedures

Genotyping of mice. Mouse tail specimens were digested overnight at 55°C with proteinase K (0.5mg/ml) in TRIS (50mM), EDTA (100mM), NaCl (100mM) and 1% SDS. Protein was precipitated from the digest with supersaturated (6M) NaCl and pelleted by ultra centrifugation (14000 rpm in a bench top Eppendorf centrifuge); DNA in the upper phase was precipitated with isopropanol, pelleted by ultra centrifugation, washed in absolute ethanol, and dissolved in 500 μl of water.

Three primers (Ransom Hill Bioscience, Ramona, CA, USA) were used in each PCR: oIMR449 and oIMR450 to amplify a 300 base pair (bp) product from the TNF-α1R-KO mutant allele, and oIMR449 and oIMR448 to amplify a 470 bp product from the wild type allele. Sequences of the primers used were as follows: TGT GAA AAG GGC ACC TTT ACG GC (oIMR448); GGC TGC AGT CCA CGC ACT GG (oIMR449); and ATT CGC CAA TGA CAA GAC GCT GG (oIMR450). The primers were used at a concentration of 6.25 μM. Each PCR reaction was carried out with 2μl of DNA, 5μl of 10x PCR buffer, 4μl of dNTP (2.5 mM), 2μl of each primer, 0.1μl of *Taq* DNA polymerase and 33μl H_2O. The following thermocycling conditions were used: 94°C for 3', 12 cycles of [94°C x 20", 64°C x 30" (-0.5°C per cycle), 72°C x 35"], 25 cycles of [94°C x 20", 58°C x 30", 72°C x 35"], and 72°C for 2'. The PCR products were separated on a 1.6% agarose gel stained with ethidium bromide using 150 V current for 45 minutes, and a 1000 bp ladder was used to estimate the band sizes.

***In vivo* infection of mice.** To examine the effect of the host immune response on mycobacterial gene expression *in vivo*, female C57Bl/6 wild type and IFN-γ-KO mice 6-8 weeks of age were infected with H37Rv using a Lovelace nebulizer (InTox Products, Moriarty, NM) to deliver 500-1,000 bacterial CFU to the lungs (Moreira, Wang, Tsenova-Berkova, *et al.*, 1997). The bacterial load at selected timepoints was evaluated by

University of Cape Town

homogenizing the left lung in PBS containing 0.05% Tween 80 and plating 10-fold serial dilutions of lung homogenate on 7H10 agar supplemented with 10% OADC and 0.5% glycerol, while the lung was used mycobacterial mRNA analysis.

***In vitro* infection of murine peritoneal macrophages cultures.** H37Ra and H37Rv were suspended in D10 medium. On day 3, mouse macrophages were washed and infected with H37Ra and H37Rv suspended in 500μl of D10, at an MOI of 3:1 (cytokine analysis: 12 h time point) or 1:3 (growth curves: days 1, 2 and 4). Phagocytosis of mycobacteria was complete with no extracellular organisms remaining by 6h post infection. Cultures were therefore not washed after the addition of mycobacteria. Macrophage viability was checked throughout the experiments by trypan blue exclusion.

University of Cape Town

2.2.4 Analysis of mouse macrophages infected with MTB *in vitro*

Mycobacterial replication. The number of viable organisms in infected macrophages was determined after removal of an aliquot of the culture supernatants for cytokine analysis. The contents of each well was expanded with PBS containing 0.25% Tween 80 to a volume of 1 ml, probe sonicated for 4 x 5s (3W), and harvested for CFU counts. Ten fold serial dilutions of the mycobacterial suspension were plated on 7H10 agar containing 10% OADC and read after 2-3 weeks.

TNF-α production. Production of TNF-α by mouse macrophages in response to infection with H37Ra or H37Rv, as well as TNF-α production by uninfected macrophages, was measured in the culture supernatants by ELISA (Endogen, Woburn, MA, USA).

2.2.5 Statistical analysis

Replication times for H37Ra and H37Rv in the macrophages from different mouse strains were calculated from day 1 to day 2 and from day 2 to day 4, using the formulae as used for

the calculation of mycobacterial replication times in human monocytes. Replication times were compared using the two-tailed Student's *T*-test. *P* values <0.05 were considered statistically significant.

2.3 CULTURE AND ANALYSIS OF MYCOBACTERIA

2.3.1 Mycobacterial strains used for the experiments

The following MTB strains were used: H37Ra (Trudeau Institute, Saranac Lake, NY) and H37Rv (Pasteur Institute, Paris), CDC1551 (Dr. T. M. Shinnick, CDC, Atlanta, GA) and HN878 (Dr. J. Musser, NIH, Hamilton, MT). H37Ra and H37Rv were derived after serial passage of H37, a clinical MTB isolate dating back from 1905. These strains have been noted for their differential ability to cause disease in mice and guinea pigs (North and Izzo, 1993; Steenken and Gardner, 1946). The clinical isolates CDC1551 and HN878 were responsible for outbreaks of tuberculosis in the Mid-West and Houston, USA, respectively during the 1990's (Sreevatsan, Pan, Stockbauer, *et al.*, 1997; Valway, Sanchez, Shinnick, *et al.*, 1998), and have since been noted for their differential ability to induce pro-inflammatory cytokines (Manca, Tsenova, Barry, *et al.*, 1999; Manca, Tsenova, Bergtold, *et al.*, 2001).

We also used recombinant *M. smegmatis* $mc^2/1$-2c strains (Dr D. B. Young, Imperial College, London, UK) containing hygromycin-resistance determining pSMT3-based plasmids encoding the 19kDa lipoprotein of MTB. In addition, *M. smegmatis* carrying plasmids in which the 19kDa gene had been modified by site-directed mutagenesis (pSMT3-19NOG encoding non-O-glycosylated 19kDa; pSMT3-19NS encoding non-secreted 19kDa; and pSMT3-19NA encoding a non-acylated form of the 19kDa) were used (Garbe, Barathi, Barnini, *et al.*, 1994; Herrmann, O'Gaora, Gallagher, *et al.*, 1996; Neyrolles, Gould, Gares, *et al.*, 2001). Mutant proteins were expressed at levels comparable to those of the wild-type

University of Cape Town

protein, and *M. smegmatis* (vector), containing the plasmid vector only, was used as a control in all infection experiments.

2.3.2 Culture of mycobacteria

MTB was grown in lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-free 7H9 broth (Difco, Detroit, MI) enriched with albumin, dextrose, catalase (ADC) and glycerol to mid-log phase, in the presence of 0.25% Tween 80, and recombinant *M. smegmatis* was grown in 7H9 broth enriched with glycerol and glucose (2g/100ml), in the presence of hygromycin B (50μg/ml) (Boehringer Mannheim, Indianapolis, IN). All cultures were sonicated at 3W for 4x5s (Fisher Scientific dismembrator 60, Pittsburgh, PA), enumerated and stored at -70°C until use.

Sputum mycobacterial culture, as well as culture of lung tissue homogenate, was performed in an automated mycobacterial culture system (MGIT). LJ slants were inoculated with 500 μl of mycobacterial suspension from the MGIT. Mycobacteria were harvested for DNA fingerprinting approximately 4-6 weeks later.

University of Cape Town

2.3.3 Restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP)

Isolation of DNA from MTB isolates. MTB was harvested from LJ slopes and heat-killed for 30' at 80°C. Bacteria were digested with proteinase K (10 mg/ml) and 10% SDS on a 60°C thermo-shaker. Preheated 5M NaCl and 10% hexadecyl trimethyl ammonium bromide (CTAB) were added to the digest for the last 15'. The suspension was briefly frozen at -70°C before adding chloroform/isoamyl alcohol (24:1). Tubes were inverted by hand and centrifuged at 14,000 rpm for 10 minutes. DNA was extracted from the aqueous phase with isopropanol, washed in 80% ethanol, dried in the speed vacuum for 5-10', and dissolved in 50μl H_20. Five μl of DNA was mixed with 1μl of dye and run on a 1% agarose gel (100 V, 1h) for visual estimation of DNA quality and concentration.

Restriction endonuclease digestion and Southern transfer of DNA. DNA (2-22μl) was cut with restriction endonuclease *PvuII* for 3h at 37°C, and the fragments separated on a 1% agarose gel (36V, overnight). The DNA fragments were Southern transferred onto a Hybond-N+ membrane (Amersham Pharmacia biotech, Piscataway, NJ) by flooding the membrane with different solutions (10% SSC (0.15 M Na_3Citrate + 1.5 M NaCl, pH=7); 1/100 HCl; 0.5 M NaOH+1.5 M NaCl; 0.5 M TRIS+1.5 M NaCl (pH=7); 10x SSC) while 50 cm of H_2O vacuum was applied. Membranes onto which the DNA had been transferred were air-dried for 10 minutes and twice UV irradiated (Optimal cross-link).

Hybridization and detection assay. The IS*6110* probe was denatured in boiling water, labeled with horseradish peroxidase (HRP) and cross-linked with glutaraldehyde. Labeled IS*6110* probe was hybridized to the DNA on the membrane in a roller bottle at 42°C overnight. Excess hybridization solution was removed with primary (360 g urea, 4 g SDS, and 25 ml 20x SSC in 1000 ml dH_2O) and secondary (2x SSC) wash buffers. Detection solutions (enhanced chemiluminescence, Amersham Pharmacia biotech) converted peroxidase-generated H_2O_2 (at the IS*6110* sites) to light by oxidation of luminol. The IS*6110* insertion patterns thus visualized were analyzed with Whole Band Analyzer software, version 3.4 (BioImage). MTB isolates that belonged to the W-Beijing family (Bifani, Mathema, Kurepina, *et al.*, 2002) were identified on the basis of high IS*6110* copy numbers, the presence of characteristic IS*6110* insertions in the origin of replication region, and spoligotype S00034 (Bifani, Mathema, Kurepina, *et al.*, 2002; Kurepina, Sreevatsan, Plikaytis, *et al.*, 1998).

2.3.4 Mycobacterial gene expression

Human lung tissue and entire right lungs of infected mice were flash frozen in liquid nitrogen and stored at -80°C until use. Lung tissue was homogenized in TRI reagent (Molecular

University of Cape Town

Research Center, Cincinnati, OH) with a Polytron homogenizer (Pro Scientific, Oxford, CT). Homogenates were centrifuged at 3000x*g* for 5' at 4°C to collect bacteria. Bacterial pellets were resuspended in 0.5 ml TRI containing 1% polyacryl carrier (Molecular Research Center), transferred to srewcap tubes containing 0.25 ml of zirconia/silica beads (Biospec Products, Bartlesville, OK), and broken using a bead-beater homogenizer (Biopsec Products). RNA was isolated using TRI Reagent and treated with DNase I (DNA-free kit, Ambion, Austin, TX) to eliminate contaminating genomic DNA.

Design of primers and molecular beacons. PCR primers (Genosys, The Woodlands, TX) were designed to amplify internal gene fragments of 50-150 bp. Reverse transcription (RT) primers were located as close as possible to the reverse PCR primers. Primers with comparable melting temperatures (60-66°C) were designed using PRIMER 3 software. Molecular beacons (Eurogentec, Philadelphia, PA) were designed and tested in PCR reactions using 10-fold serial dilutions of H37Rv chromosomal DNA as template.

Reverse transcription and real-time PCR with molecular beacons. RT reactions, typically containing 7 gene-specific primers, were carried out using the Klenow fragment of DNA polymerase from *Carboxythermus hydrogenoformans* (*C. therm* kit, Roche, Indianapolis, IN), as follows: annealing step 95°C (1'), 65°C (3'), 57°C (3'); polymerisation step 60°C (30'); RT inactivation step 95°C (5'). Real-time PCR reactions typically contained 2 μl of the RT mixes and were run on an ABI7900 real-time PCR machine and analyzed according to the manufacturer's instructions. The PCR conditions used were as follows: Amplitaq Gold activation step 95°C (10'); 15 cycles of 95°C (30"), 65°C (-0.5°C step down each cycle, 30"), 72°C (30"); 25 cycles of 95°C (30"), 57°C (30"), 72°C (30").

Calculation of induction ratios (IR). RNA samples were prepared from bacteria grown *in vitro* (to rule out potential strain specific quantitative differences with respect to the ability to express the genes studied) and *in vivo*. For each sample, *sigA* mRNA and target

University of Cape Town

mRNAs were reversed-transcribed together in a single reaction, and the resulting cDNAs were quantified in parallel by real-time PCR with molecular beacons. The target cDNA was internally calibrated to the *sigA* cDNA in the same sample, and expressed as the induction ratio (IR): [Target mRNA]/[*sigA* mRNA]. IR>1 suggests that expression of the target gene was induced *in vivo*; an IR<1 reflects repression *in vivo*.

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

Chapter 3

Tumor necrosis factor-alpha mediated growth restriction of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* H37Ra is observed in mouse macrophages but not in human monocytes *in vitro*

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

3.1 ABSTRACT

M. tuberculosis strains H37Ra and H37Rv are distinguished by their differential ability to cause progressive disease in mice and guinea pigs. To understand the difference in virulence of the two strains, we evaluated their growth and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α) producing capacity in cultures of human monocytes and peritoneal macrophages from wild type and gene-disrupted mice. Similar growth of H37Ra and H37Rv was observed in human monocytes. Monocyte maturation, but not cyto-adherence, resulted in growth restriction of both strains. In wild type mouse macrophages, H37Rv grew logarithmically while growth of H37Ra slowed down significantly by 48h post infection. Similar differences in growth of H37Rv versus H37Ra were observed in macrophages obtained from mice with disruptions in the genes encoding inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS), interferon-gamma (IFN-γ) or the IFN-γ receptor. In contrast, mouse macrophages obtained from mice deficient in TNF-α were unable to control the growth of H37Ra. In both mouse and human macrophages, infection with H37Rv induced higher levels of TNF-α production than infection with H37Ra. Our observations suggest that growth restriction of H37Ra in mouse macrophages is mediated through a TNF-α dependent, iNOS and IFN-γ independent pathway that may be absent in human monocyte-derived macrophages.

3.2 INTRODUCTION

Mycobacterium tuberculosis H37Ra and H37Rv could be seen as the paradigm strains to study the effects of related mycobacterial strains with diverse biological properties on the interaction between host cell and pathogen. The parental strain of H37Ra and H37Rv, H37, was isolated from sputum of a 19 years old male with chronic pulmonary TB in 1905. Multiple passages on artificial media did not appear to affect the virulence of H37 until 1922, when it was noted that some H37 strains had lost their ability to cause progressive disease in

University of Cape Town

guinea pigs. Continued cultivation of these variant strains on potato-bile and fresh egg medium yielded an almost avirulent strain (Steenken and Gardner, 1946). The strains derived from H37 that had remained virulent became known as H37Rv, and the attenuated variants as H37Ra. To date, the genetic mutations or deletions that resulted in attenuation of H37Ra remain unknown (Brosch, Philipp, Stavropoulos, *et al.*, 1999; Pascopella, Collins, Martin, *et al.*, 1994).

The differential ability of H37Ra and H37Rv to cause disease in guinea pigs and mice has been confirmed in several studies (Middlebrook, Dubos and Pierce, 1947; North and Izzo, 1993; Pierce, Dubos and Middlebrook, 1947; Sever and Youmans, 1957). These strains have been used extensively since to study mycobacterial growth, survival and virulence. In immunocompetent mice, H37Rv was shown to cause progressive disease in the lungs, while the growth of H37Ra was controlled. In T-lymphocyte deficient mice (SCID mice), the growth of H37Ra was, at least in part, controlled by a glucocorticosteroid-sensitive mycobacteriostatic pathway within macrophages (North and Izzo, 1993). Growth of H37Ra was also controlled by aerosol infected mice deficient in iNOS and/or phagocyte oxidase (Phox); mycobacteriostasis of H37Ra *in vivo* therefore appears to result from an iNOS independent mechanism (Jung, LaCourse, Ryan, *et al.*, 2002).

Infection of macrophages *in vitro* is a useful model to study the growth and control of growth of *M. tuberculosis* in host cells. The relative virulence of H37Ra and H37Rv is retained when these strains are used to infect murine or guinea pig peritoneal macrophages. In these cells, H37Rv grows logarithmically until the host cell monolayer is destroyed by the heavy bacterial burden. In contrast, H37Ra fails to grow in these cells (Falcone, Bassey, Toniolo, *et al.*, 1994; Paul, Laochumroonvorapong and Kaplan, 1996; Suter, 1952). If the murine macrophages are activated by treatment with the cytokines IFN-γ and TNF-α, or by

University of Cape Town

exposure to LPS, then the growth of H37Rv is also controlled (Chan, Xing, Magliozzo, *et al.*, 1992; Denis, 1991; Flesch and Kaufmann, 1987; Rook, Steele, Ainsworth, *et al.*, 1986).

A number of recent studies have shown that human monocyte-derived macrophages (MDM) are permissive for the growth of H37Rv and other mycobacterial strains. For example, we have reported that H37Ra and H37Rv grow similarly in human macrophages *in vitro* (Laochumroonvorapong, Paul, Manca, *et al.*, 1997; Paul, Laochumroonvorapong and Kaplan, 1996). Growth of H37Ra was also demonstrated in human monocytes and alveolar macrophages (Hirsch, Ellner, Russell, *et al.*, 1994). However, other investigators have found that while H37Rv grows in human macrophages, H37Ra does not (Engele, Stobetael, Castiglione, *et al.*, 2002; Silver, Li and Ellner, 1998), or that H37Ra grows significantly slower than H37Rv (Zhang, Gong, Lin, *et al.*, 1998). The mechanism underlying the differences in the ability of murine and human macrophages to regulate the growth of *M. tuberculosis* strains is not understood.

Apoptosis has been put forward as one of the host defense mechanisms that contributes to mycobacteriostasis (Molloy, Laochumroonvorapong and Kaplan, 1994; Oddo, Renno, Attinger, *et al.*, 1998). At high MOI's, MTB induces apoptosis of infected macrophages by a TNF-α mediated mechanism (Keane, Balcewicz-Sablinska, Remold, *et al.*, 1997). FASL or TNF-α mediated apoptosis of infected human MDM results in reduced viability of intracellular H37Ra and H37Rv (Oddo, Renno, Attinger, *et al.*, 1998). Infection of human macrophages with H37Ra has been shown to result in more host cell apoptosis than infection with H37Rv (Keane, Remold and Kornfeld, 2000). Apoptosis of H37Rv infected macrophages may be prevented by upregulation of Mcl-1 (an anti-apoptotic member of the Bcl-2 family) by infected cells (Sly, Hingley-Wilson, Reiner, *et al.*, 2003), or by increased IL-10 production and shedding of soluble TNF-α receptor II, resulting in TNF-α neutralization (Balcewicz-Sablinska, Keane, Kornfeld, *et al.*, 1998). Differential rates of

University of Cape Town

induction of host cell apoptosis may be one of the mechanisms to explain the different growth rates of H37Ra and H37Rv in human macrophages. However, no apoptosis was observed in macrophages infected with H37Ra or H37Rv at low inoculum, yet these cells were perfectly capable of restricting the growth of H37Ra but not H37Rv (Engele, Stobetael, Castiglione, *et al.*, 2002). It is therefore likely that other mycobacteriostatic mechanisms exist.

H37Ra and H37Rv are easily distinguished by IS*6110* restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP). Propagation of H37Ra and H37Rv since the 1920's has resulted in polymorphic variants of these strains that have circulated widely among laboratories (Bifani, Moghazeh, Shopsin, *et al.*, 2000). Few studies have confirmed or provided the genotypic identity of the H37Ra and H37Rv strains used. It is possible that subtle genotypic polymorphism between strains has given rise to biological differences among different isolates of H37Ra and H37Rv used in these studies.

In this chapter, we have investigated potential mechanism that could account for the different growth characteristics of avirulent and virulent *M. tuberculosis* in mouse and human macrophages. We performed RFLP analysis to confirm the identity of the H37Ra and H37Rv strains used in the experiments. We investigated the effect of cell adherence and maturation on the ability of human peripheral blood monocytes to restrict intracellular growth of H37Ra and H37Rv in a low-dose *in vitro* infection model. In addition, we used peritoneal macrophages from mice with disruptions in immune regulatory genes involved in macrophage activation and anti-microbial activity to study the contribution of these gene products to mycobacterial growth restriction. Finally, the ability of H37Ra and H37Rv to induce TNF-α production by human and mouse macrophages was studied by measuring the concentration of this cytokine in the culture supernatants.

University of Cape Town

3.3 RESULTS

Confirmation of strains H37Ra and H37Rv. *M. tuberculosis* H37Ra (Trudeau Institute, Saranac Lake, NY) and H37Rv (Pasteur Institute, Paris) were used for the experiments. To first confirm that the *M. tuberculosis* strains were indeed H37Ra and H37Rv, RFLP analysis was carried out. The RFLP pattern for our laboratory strain of H37Rv was identical to a polymorphic variant of H37Rv previously characterized by Bifani *et al.* (Bifani, Moghazeh, Shopsin, *et al.*, 2000) (Figure 3-1). Our strain of H37Ra was clearly distinguishable from H37Rv, and its IS*6110* RFLP pattern indistinguishable from the H37Ra polymorphism recently described (Bifani, Moghazeh, Shopsin, *et al.*, 2000). The results presented in Figure 3-1 confirm that the two isolates used were the appropriate strains. These strains were used in experiments carried out both in New York and in Cape Town.

Growth of H37Ra and H37Rv in human monocytes and monocyte-derived macrophages *in vitro*. Human monocytes were isolated from PBMC obtained from healthy persons. Monocytes, enriched by cytoadherence, were infected with H37Ra and H37Rv at an MOI of 1:1. The ability of the *M. tuberculosis* strains to replicate within these cells was examined. No significant difference in the replication times of H37Ra and H37Rv in freshly isolated monocytes was observed (Figure 3-2A).

In monocytes infected immediately after introduction into culture, H37Ra and H37Rv showed a mean replication rate of 27.6 h and 31.9 h respectively over a 3-day period of infection. If monocytes were first cultured for 7 days and then infected, both strains grew more slowly with a generation time of 62.3 h and 56.9 h respectively (Figure 3-2A). Viability of either fresh monocytes or cultured monocytes was >90% throughout the experiments. To evaluate whether culture conditions, such as adherence to plastic, affected the growth rate of these two strains, human monocytes were cultured and infected in plastic wells (adherent) or teflon wells (non-adherent). The growth rates of H37Ra and H37Rv were similar in adherent

University of Cape Town

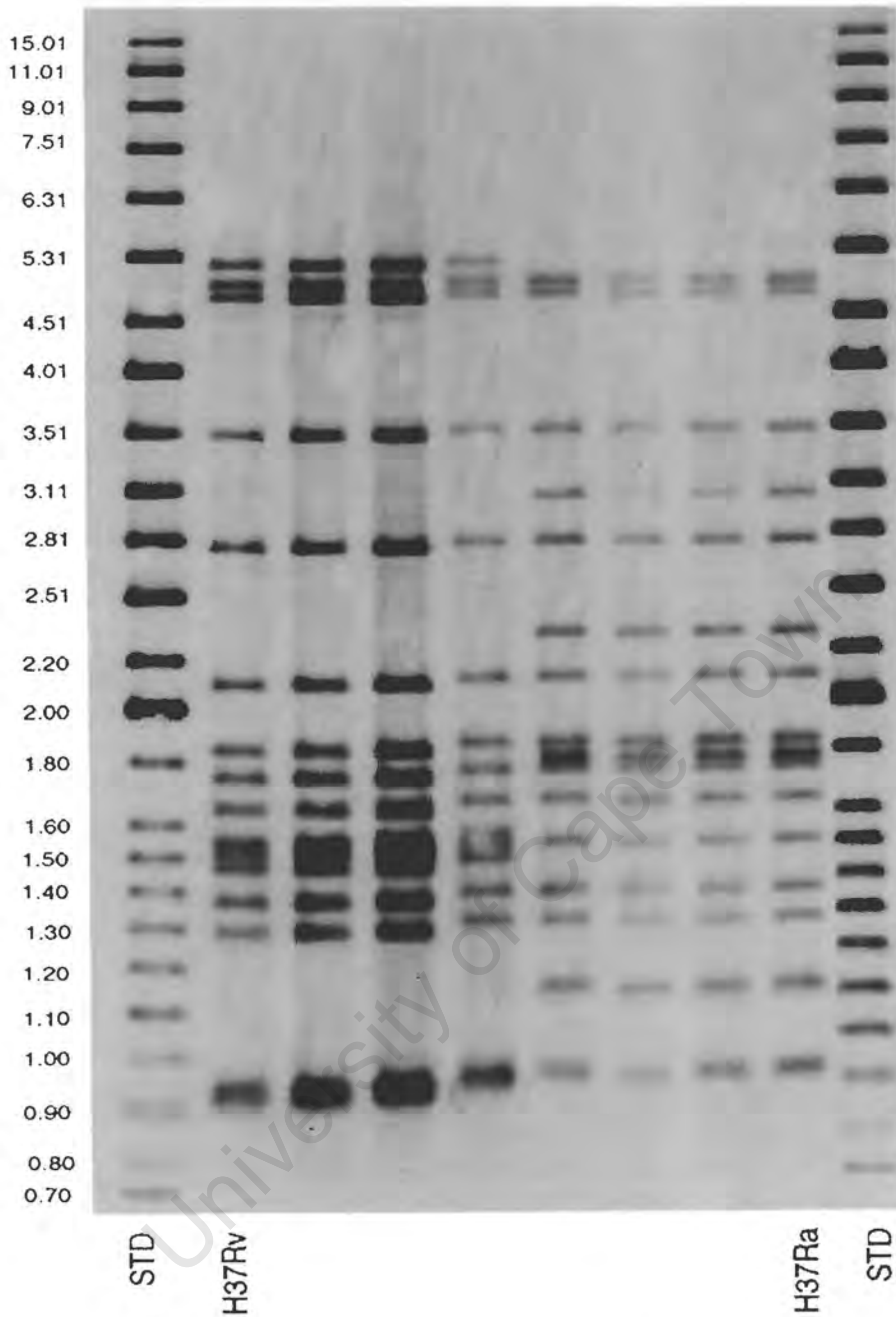
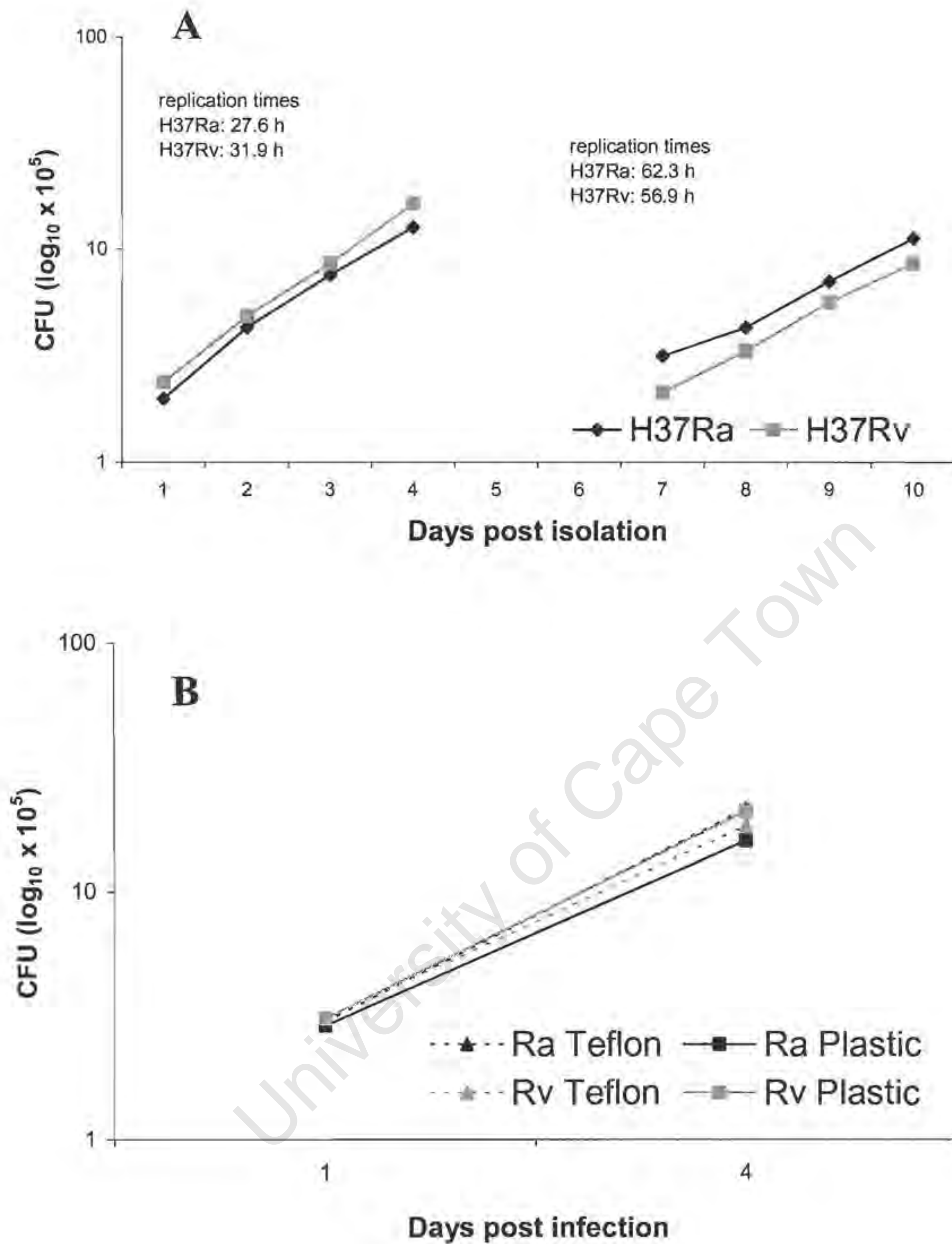


Figure 3-1 RFLP fingerprints of the *M. tuberculosis* strains H37Ra and H37Rv used for these experiments. DNA was isolated from three cultures of each strain, digested with restriction endonuclease *PvuII*, Southern hybridized with labeled IS*6110* probe, and visualized by enhanced chemiluminescence. H37Rv (lanes 3-5) and H37Ra (lanes 6-8) were identical to their respective reference strains (lanes 2 and 9 respectively).



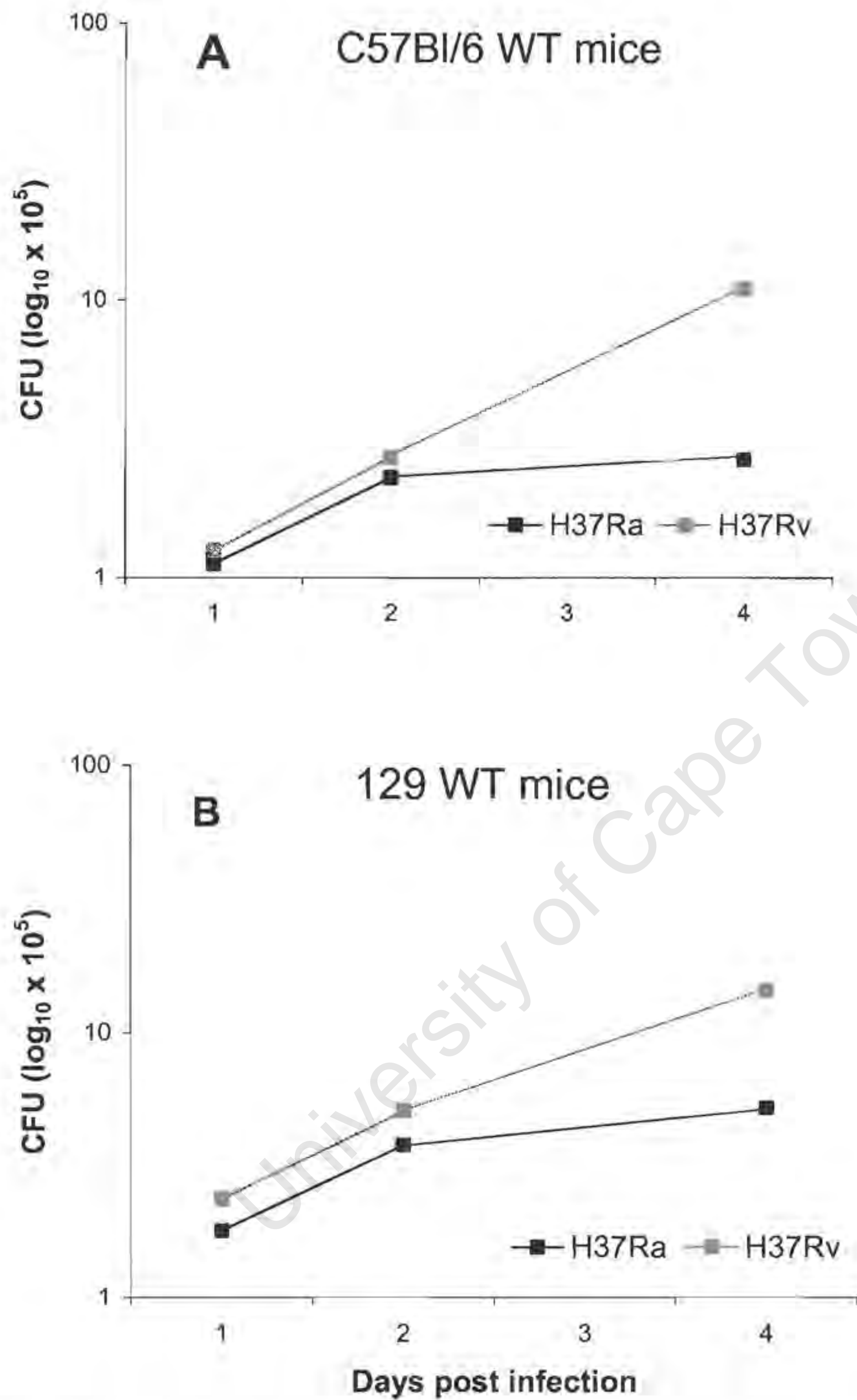
University of Cape Town

Figure 3-2 Growth of H37Ra and H37Rv in human monocytes maintained in culture for 0 or 7 days prior to infection (A), and in human monocytes cultured in teflon (non-adherent) or plastic (adherent) culture wells (B). Representative experiments of 2-4 experiments each are shown; standard deviations between replicate culture wells were less than 10%.

and non-adherent cells. Replication times for H37Ra and H37Rv were 35 h and 34.3 h respectively in non-adherent macrophages, and 34.1 h and 36.7 h in adherent macrophages (Figure 3-2 B). During the 3 day experimental period following infection, the viability of monocytes in either culture system was >90%. Thus, whether the monocytes were adherent or non-adherent, freshly isolated and introduced into culture or cultured for 7 days prior to infection, the growth rates of H37Ra and H37Rv were similar during 3 days of infection.

Growth of H37Ra and H37Rv in mouse macrophages *in vitro*. Unstimulated mouse peritoneal macrophages were obtained by lavage from C57Bl/6 and 129 (wild-type) mice. After 3 days of culture, the cells were infected with H37Ra or H37Rv at an MOI of 1 bacillus per 3 cells, and bacillary growth was evaluated. A clear difference in the growth of the two strains was noted (Figure 3-3A, $p=0.006$ and Figure 3-3B, $p=0.04$). In macrophages from 129 mice, H37Rv demonstrated fast logarithmic growth, with a mean replication time of 21.6 h from day 1-2 and 32.1 h from day 2-4 of infection. In comparison, H37Ra initially multiplied with a mean replication time of 22.1 h from day 1-2. However, from day 2-4, the growth rate of H37Ra was significantly reduced (replication time 102.5 h). Thus, in macrophages obtained from 129 mice, from days 2-4 the numbers of H37Ra increased by only 35%, while the numbers of H37Rv increased about 300%. In macrophages from C57Bl/6 mice, H37Rv replicated somewhat faster, with a mean replication time of 17.6 h from day 1-2, and 23.8 h from days 2-4 (Figure 3-3). H37Ra showed a replication time of 23.3 h from day 1-2 and 216 h from day 2-4. Thus, in macrophages obtained from C57Bl/6 mice, the numbers of H37Ra increased from days 2-4 by 18% while H37Rv increased by 400%, a slightly greater rate of increase than that observed in macrophages obtained from 129 mice. Throughout the experimental period, the viability of the macrophage cultures remained >90%.

University of Cape Town

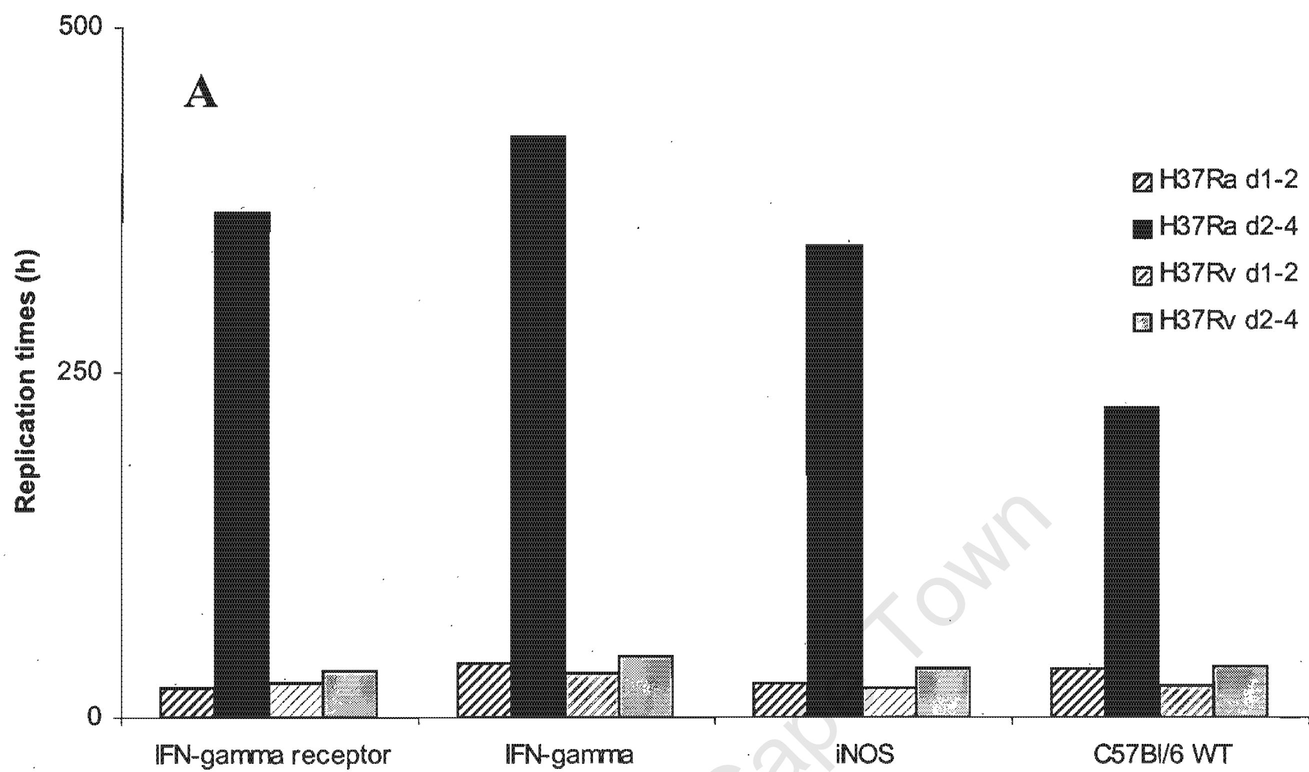


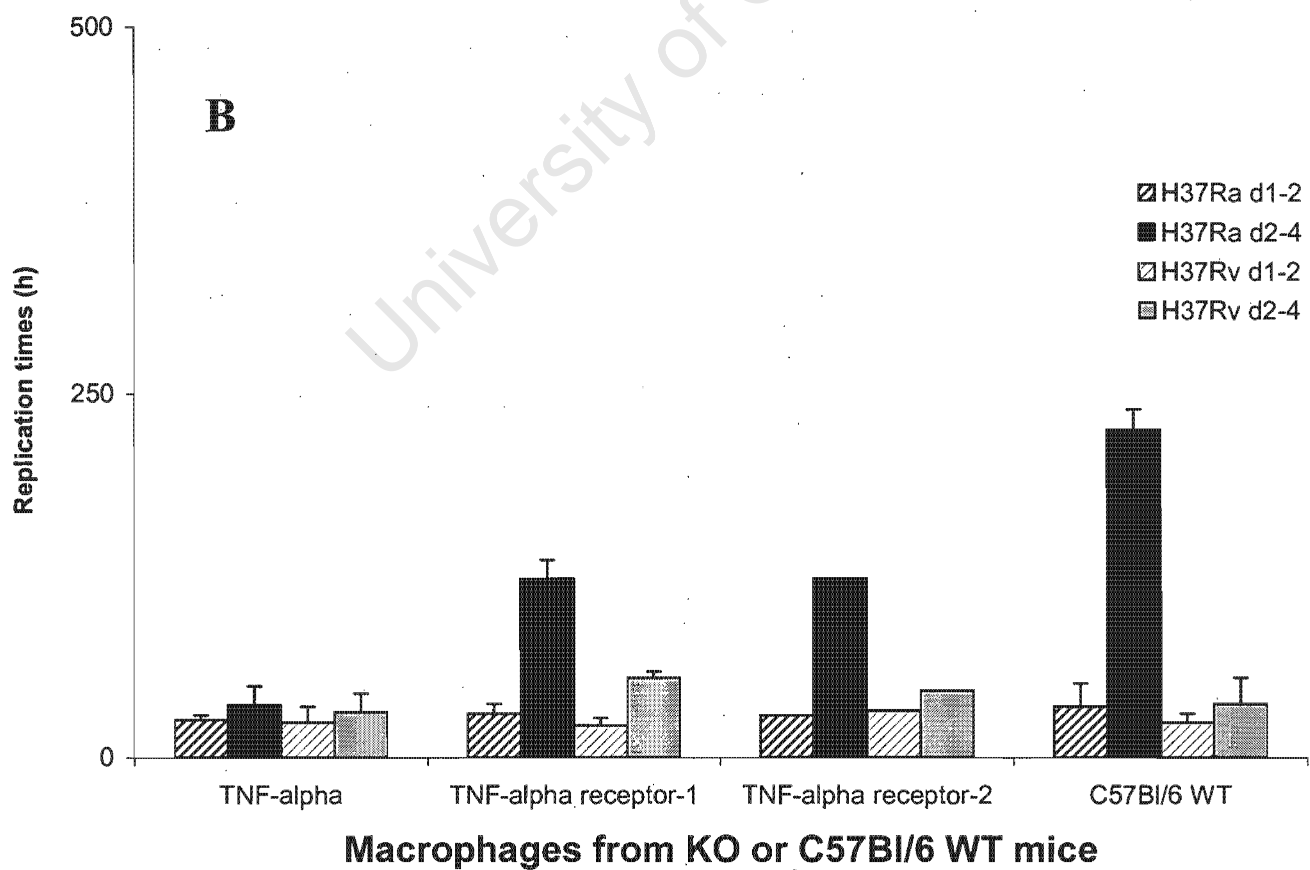
University of Cape Town

Figure 3-3 Growth of H37Ra and H37Rv in peritoneal macrophages from C57Bl/6 (A) and 129 (B) wild-type mice. Representative experiments of 2-4 experiments each are shown; standard deviations between replicate culture wells were below 10%.

Figure 3-4 Growth rates of H37Ra (black bars) and H37Rv (gray bars) in peritoneal macrophages from selected gene-deficient and wild type mice. Growth rates from day 1 to 2 are displayed as hatched bars, from day 2 to 4 as solid bars. The ability of mouse macrophages to restrict the growth of H37Ra does not require signaling trough the IFN-γ receptor or iNOS (A). In contrast, cells deficient in TNF-α or its receptors are significantly more permissive for replication of H37Ra. Results are the mean of 3 experiments (TNF-α-KO, iNOS-KO and C57BL/6), 2 experiments (TNF-αR1-KO), or a single experiment (TNF-αR2-KO, IFN-γ-KO, and IFN-γR-KO). Error bars indicate standard deviations.

University of Cape Town





University of Cape Town

Growth of H37Ra and H37Rv in macrophages from gene-disrupted mice. To establish whether specific immune regulatory pathways were involved in the control of growth of H37Ra, macrophages prepared from iNOS-KO, IFN-γ-KO, IFN-γR-KO, TNF-αR1-KO, TNF-αR2-KO and TNF-α-KO mice were infected with either H37Ra or H37Rv. Growth of the bacilli was evaluated over 3 days. H37Rv grew rapidly in all macrophages, both on days 1-2 and on days 2-4. While H37Ra replicated as well as H37Rv on days 1-2 in all the macrophages tested, by days 2-4, a difference in the growth of H37Ra was apparent (Figures 3-4A and 3-4B). In wild-type, iNOS-KO, IFN-γ-KO, and IFN-γR-KO macrophages, growth of H37Ra was controlled from days 2-4 (generation times of 224 h, 343 h, 422 h, 366 h, respectively). In contrast, in TNF-α-KO macrophages, control of growth of H37Ra from days 2-4 of the infection was not seen (generation time of 36 h). When macrophages obtained from TNF-αR1-KO or TNF-αR2-KO mice were infected with H37Ra, the growth rate from days 2-4 was intermediate (132 and 114 h respectively) between that seen in wild-type macrophages and that seen in TNF-α-KO macrophages (Figure 3-4B). These results suggested that TNF-α or a TNF-α induced pathway might be involved in the control of growth of H37Ra in murine macrophages.

TNF-α production in response to infection of murine and human macrophages with H37Ra or H37Rv. To determine the effect of infection with H37Ra or H37Rv on TNF-α production, wild-type murine macrophages were infected at an MOI of 3:1. At 12 h post infection, H37Rv induced significantly higher levels of TNF-α than H37Ra ($p<0.0001$). H37Rv also induced higher levels of TNF-α production in macrophages from IFN-γ-KO and TNF-αR1-KO mice, compared to H37Ra (Figure 3-5A). In general, levels of TNF-α induced by infection of TNF-αR1-KO and IFN-γ-KO macrophages with either *M. tuberculosis* strain were much lower than those induced in wild-type macrophages. Of course, no TNF-α was

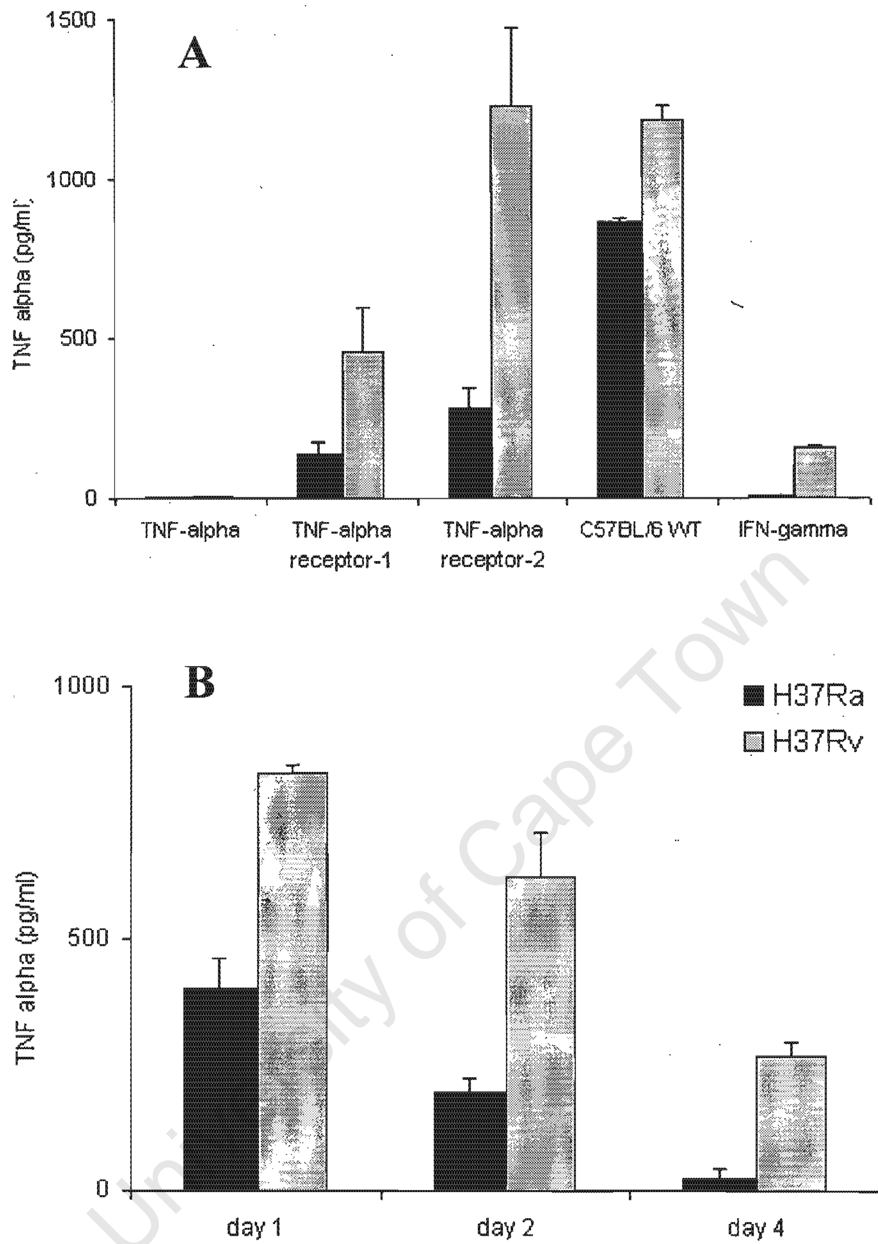
University of Cape Town

produced in TNF-α-KO macrophages following infection with either strain. Infection of human monocyte-derived macrophages with either strain induced efficient TNF-α production (Figure 3-5B). Again, H37Rv infection was associated with significantly higher levels of TNF-α (p=0.01) at all time points. In human and mouse macrophages therefore, growth rates of H37Ra and H37Rv were unrelated to the absolute concentration of TNF-α induced by the infection.

3.4 DISCUSSION

We have shown that growth of *M. tuberculosis* H37Ra in mouse macrophages is restricted by a TNF-α dependent, iNOS and IFN-γ independent mechanism. We observed that incomplete ablation of TNF-α signaling, as occurred in mouse macrophages deficient for either the p55 or p75 TNF-α receptors, resulted in partial growth suppression of H37Ra. Several lines of evidence support the presence in mouse macrophages of a mycobacteriostatic pathway mediated through TNF-α. Recent studies demonstrated that growth of *M. bovis BCG* in mouse macrophages is controlled through both iNOS dependent and iNOS independent mechanisms (Bekker, Freeman, Murray, *et al.*, 2001). TNF-α was shown to stimulate macrophages to control the growth of intracellular *M. bovis BCG* in macrophages from iNOS-KO and TNF-α-KO mice, and in macrophages from wild-type mice when iNOS activity was chemically blocked. Similarly, reduced growth of *M. avium* was observed when TNF-α was added to infected mouse macrophage cultures (Appelberg and Orme, 1993; Furney, Skinner, Roberts, *et al.*, 1992), whereas neutralization of TNF-α resulted in enhancement of growth of the bacilli (Sarmento and Appelberg, 1995). Like H37Ra in our experiments, the TNF-α mediated growth restriction of *M. avium* was independent of iNOS or the production of reactive nitrogen intermediates (RNI) (Appelberg and Orme, 1993;

University of Cape Town



University of Cape Town

Figure 3-5 TNF-α production by infected peritoneal murine macrophages (A) and human monocytes (B). Supernatants were collected 12 hours after infection of murine macrophages with H37Ra (black bars) or H37Rv (open bars), or 1 to 3 days after infection of human monocytes. At each time point, the number of viable organisms recovered from infected macrophages was similar for H37Ra and H37Rv. TNF-α levels were measured by ELISA. No TNF-α was detected in uninfected macrophage cultures.

Gomes, Florido, Pais, *et al.*, 1999). In addition, neutralization of TNF-α has been reported to enhance growth of H37Ra in mouse macrophages *in vitro* (Appelberg, Sarmento and Castro, 1995). Taken together these observations show that mouse macrophages are capable of restricting mycobacterial growth through a TNF-α dependent, iNOS independent pathway.

In the mouse, TNF-α is the ligand for at least 2 distinct receptors on the surface of the macrophage (p55 or TNF-α receptor 1 and p75 or TNF-α receptor 2) (Erickson, de Sauvage, Kikly, *et al.*, 1994; Pfeffer, Matsuyama, Kundig, *et al.*, 1993). TNF-αR1 deficient mice are highly susceptible to intracellular pathogens including *M. tuberculosis*, whereas TNF-αR2 deficient mice display an increased susceptibility to *Listeria monocytogenes*, but their resistance to *M. tuberculosis* is unknown (Erickson, de Sauvage, Kikly, *et al.*, 1994; Flynn, Goldstein, Chan, *et al.*, 1995; Pfeffer, Matsuyama, Kundig, *et al.*, 1993). We observed a similar degree of growth inhibition of H37Ra in macrophages from TNF-αR1-KO and TNF-αR2-KO mice. Incomplete abrogation of TNF-α signaling may explain the partial growth inhibition of H37Ra in these cells. Similar growth rates in macrophages deficient in p55 or p75 TNF-α receptor might imply that the pathway of mycobacterial growth restriction is not dependent on NF-κB activation, since only TNF-αR1 is reported to activate this transcription factor (Kalb, Bluethmann, Moore, *et al.*, 1996; Pfeffer, Matsuyama, Kundig, *et al.*, 1993).

University of Cape Town

In contrast to the differential growth of H37Ra and H37Rv in murine macrophages, similar rates of replication were observed in human monocytes. Several differences between murine and human macrophages with respect to restricting mycobacterial replication have been reported. *M. bovis BCG* is unable to replicate in unstimulated murine peritoneal macrophages (Bekker, Freeman, Murray, *et al.*, 2001; Falcone, Bassey, Toniolo, *et al.*, 1994), whereas human monocytes were found to be permissive for the growth of this organism (Laochumroonvorapong, Paul, Manca, *et al.*, 1997; Molloy, Meyn, Smith, *et al.*, 1993; Silver, Li and Ellner, 1998). Also, murine and human macrophages differ in their response to

activation by IFN-γ. While IFN-γ treated murine macrophages display enhanced mycobacteriostatic activity against *M. tuberculosis* (Chan, Xing, Magliozzo, *et al.*, 1992; Denis, 1991; Flesch and Kaufmann, 1987; Sato, Akaki and Tomioka, 1998), IFN-γ stimulation of human monocytes does not result in increased mycobacteriostasis (Denis, Gregg and Ghandirian, 1990; Douvas, Looker, Vatter, *et al.*, 1985; Rook, Steele, Ainsworth, *et al.*, 1986; Thoma-Uszynski, Stenger, Takeuchi, *et al.*, 2001). In addition, opposite effects of TNF-α neutralizing antibodies have been reported, with enhanced replication of H37Ra in murine macrophages (Appelberg, Sarmento and Castro, 1995) and reduced growth in human phagocytes (Engele, Stobetael, Castiglione, *et al.*, 2002). Finally, it was recently demonstrated that murine and human macrophages utilize different mycobacteriostatic pathways following ligation of Toll-like receptor-2 (Thoma-Uszynski, Stenger, Takeuchi, *et al.*, 2001). It is therefore plausible that biological differences between murine and human macrophages may account for the observed difference in growth patterns of H37Ra in these cells.

The lack of growth control of H37Ra in human monocyte-derived macrophages observed in our experiments despite ample TNF-α production, suggests that the TNF-α dependent pathway of mycobacterial growth restriction in mouse macrophages may not be operational in human phagocytes. In both human and mouse macrophages, increased TNF-α production was observed after infection with H37Rv relative to H37Ra. Relatively increased TNF-α production by H37Rv infected human monocytes and alveolar macrophages has been reported previously (Engele, Stobetael, Castiglione, *et al.*, 2002; Silver, Li and Ellner, 1998), and has led to the suggestion that TNF-α may support the growth of virulent mycobacteria (Byrd, 1997; Engele, Stobetael, Castiglione, *et al.*, 2002).

Our observation that H37Ra and H37Rv display similar growth in human monocytes is in keeping with our earlier observations (Laochumroonvorapong, Paul, Manca, *et al.*, 1997;

University of Cape Town

Paul, Laochumroonvorapong and Kaplan, 1996). Similar growth of H37Ra and H37Rv has also been observed in human type II alveolar cells (Bermudez and Goodman, 1996), and exponential growth of H37Ra was reported in human monocytes, and to a lesser extent human alveolar macrophages (Hirsch, Ellner, Russell, *et al.*, 1994). However, others have reported reduced growth (Zhang, Gong, Lin, *et al.*, 1998) or absent growth (Engele, Stobetael, Castiglione, *et al.*, 2002; Keane, Remold and Kornfeld, 2000; Silver, Li and Ellner, 1998) of H37Ra in human monocytes or alveolar macrophages. The controversy surrounding the ability of the avirulent strain of *M. tuberculosis* to grow in human macrophages may relate to the culture conditions of the cells, or the multiplicity of infection or to the particular strain of H37Ra used for the experiments. Here we evaluated the effect of host cell maturation and adherence on their ability to inhibit mycobacterial replication. Whereas adherence of monocytes had no effect on mycobacterial growth, maturation of cells in tissue culture was associated with reduced growth of *M. tuberculosis*. However, growth of H37Ra and H37Rv were inhibited to the same extent in mature cells. We also performed RFLP analysis of the strains used for these experiments. This confirmed the identity of both H37Ra and H37Rv. It has become apparent that although H37Rv has retained its virulence in experimental murine infection, very little is known about the effect of serial passage of H37Ra on the degree of attenuation of this strain. A recent study demonstrated several polymorphisms among reference H37Ra strains (Bifani, Moghazeh, Shopsin, *et al.*, 2000). The genetic diversity of H37Ra may be one of the variables that could explain the different results obtained in the studies published to date.

In conclusion, here we show that the reduced ability of *M. tuberculosis* H37Ra to grow in murine macrophages may be due to the action of a TNF-α dependent pathway. This mycobacteriostatic pathway does not affect the ability of H37Rv to replicate in mouse macrophages. In addition, several lines of evidence suggest a difference in biologic behavior

University of Cape Town

between mouse and human macrophages following mycobacterial infection. These differences should be taken into consideration when extrapolations are made from experimental murine tuberculosis to the human disease.

University of Cape Town

Chapter 4

The 19-kilodalton lipoprotein of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* inhibits *Mycobacterium smegmatis*-induced cytokine production by human macrophages *in vitro*

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

4.1 ABSTRACT

Vaccination of mice with *M. vaccae* or *M. smegmatis* induces some protection against *M. tuberculosis* (MTB) challenge. The 19kDa lipoprotein of MTB, expressed in *M. vaccae* or *M. smegmatis* (*M. smegmatis* 19kDa), abrogates this protective immunity. To investigate the mechanism of this suppression of immunity, human monocyte-derived macrophages (MDM) were infected with *M. smegmatis* 19kDa. Infection resulted in reduced production of tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α) ($P < 0.01$), interleukin-12 (IL-12) ($P < 0.05$), IL-6 ($P < 0.05$) and IL-10 ($P < 0.05$), compared to infection with *M. smegmatis* (vector). The 19kDa antigen had no differential effect on expression of co-stimulatory molecules on the surface of *M. smegmatis* infected MDM, nor did it affect the proliferation of pre-sensitized T-cells co-cultured with infected MDM. The immunosuppressive effect was dependent on the presence of glycosylated and acylated 19kDa lipoprotein in the mycobacteria-containing phagosomes. These results suggest that the diminished protection against challenge with *M. tuberculosis* seen in mice vaccinated with *M. smegmatis* expressing the 19kDa lipoprotein might have been the result of reduced TNF-α and IL-12 production, resulting in reduced T-cell activation.

University of Cape Town

4.2 INTRODUCTION

Recent vaccination studies have suggested that the 19kDa antigen of *M. tuberculosis* may possess immune-inhibitory effects. In this chapter, two recombinant mycobacterial strains expressing the 19kDa lipoprotein were used to infect human monocyte-derived macrophages (MDM), to study the effect of this antigen on host cell cytokine production and expression of antigen-presenting and co-stimulatory molecules. Expression of the 19kDa antigen, a glycosylated lipoprotein, by recombinant mycobacteria allowed us to study the immunological properties of this antigen in the context of other mycobacterial cell wall

antigens. The 19kDa lipoprotein has been extensively studied for its unusual structure, and as immunodiagnostic, vaccine candidate, and ligand for the Toll-like receptor 2 (TLR-2).

The 19kDa lipoprotein of *M. tuberculosis.* The 19kDa lipoprotein is a secreted, cell wall associated protein (Young and Garbe, 1991), and is restricted to the MTB complex (which includes *M. tuberculosis*, *M. bovis BCG*, *M. microti* and *M. africanum*) (Nair, Rouse and Morris, 1992; Oftung, Mustafa, Husson, *et al.*, 1987). The 19kDa antigens of MTB and *M. bovis BCG* are identical, bear no structural homology to other proteins, and have no known function ascribed to them (Ashbridge, Booth, Watson, *et al.*, 1989; Collins, Patki, Wall, *et al.*, 1990). The MTB 19kDa antigen exists as a glycosylated lipoprotein (Fifis, Costopoulos, Radford, *et al.*, 1991; Garbe, Harris, Vordermeier, *et al.*, 1993; Young and Garbe, 1991). The unusual lipid and carbohydrate moieties may serve to influence antigen presentation or binding to major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules (Garbe, Harris, Vordermeier, *et al.*, 1993) or prevent proteolysis (Herrmann, O'Gaora, Gallagher, *et al.*, 1996). The lipid tail is essential for intracellular trafficking of the 19kDa antigen, which occurs after phagocytosis of the mycobacterium. Its subsequent entry into the class I antigen presentation pathway may serve immune recognition of MTB infected phagocytes by $CD8^{+}$T-lymphocytes (Neyrolles, Gould, Gares, *et al.*, 2001).

Innate immunity and the 19kDa antigen. The innate immune response serves to protect the host during the earliest stages of infection, and provides the appropriate co-stimulatory and cytokine signals required for the induction of adaptive (cell-mediated) immunity. Toll-like receptors have recently been described as a novel class of receptors on mononuclear phagocytes that mediate innate immune responses to microbial ligands including lipoproteins (Aderem and Ulevitch, 2000). Toll-like receptors enable the macrophages to sample the contents of their vacuoles, and elicit a microbe-specific inflammatory response (Underhill, Ozinsky, Hajjar, *et al.*, 1999). Ligation of TLR results in

NF-κB mediated cytokine production and co-stimulatory molecule expression (Medzhitov, Preston-Hurlburt and Janeway, 1997).

MTB and MTB cell wall components, including the 19kDa lipoprotein, lipoarabinomannan (LAM), and cell wall lipids can activate macrophages through TLR-2 dependent signaling, which results in the production of TNF-α and IL-12, two key cytokines involved in regulating the adaptive immune response (Brightbill, Libraty, Krutzik, *et al.*, 1999; Faure, Equils, Sieling, *et al.*, 2000; Means, Wang, Lien, *et al.*, 1999; Underhill, Ozinsky, Smith, *et al.*, 1999). Ligation of TLR-2 by the 19kDa has been shown to result in iNOS expression and nitric oxide (NO) production (Brightbill, Libraty, Krutzik, *et al.*, 1999), apoptosis (Aliprantis, Yang, Mark, *et al.*, 1999; Lopez, Sly, Luu, *et al.*, 2003), dendritic cell maturation (Hertz, Kiertscher, Godowski, *et al.*, 2001), and inhibition of MHC class II expression (Noss, Pai, Sellati, *et al.*, 2001). Ligation of TLR-2 by the 19kDa results in activation of NO-dependent mycobacteriostatic pathways in mouse macrophages and NO-independent pathways in human monocyte-derived macrophages (Thoma-Uszynski, Stenger, Takeuchi, *et al.*, 2001).

Acquired immunity and the 19kDa antigen. The MTB 19kDa antigen elicits both humeral and cellular immune responses. Antibodies against the 19kDa are present in mice infected with MTB or *M. bovis BCG* (Ashbridge, Prestidge, Booth, *et al.*, 1990; Verbon, Kuijper, Jansen, *et al.*, 1992), and T-cell clones reactive against the 19kDa or 19kDa-derived peptides may be generated from their lymph nodes (Ashbridge, Backstrom, Liu, *et al.*, 1992; Boom, Husson, Young, *et al.*, 1987; Harris, Vordermeier, Friscia, *et al.*, 1993; Harris, Vordermeier, Roman, *et al.*, 1991). Antibodies against the 19kDa, and 19kDa-specific, IFN-γ secreting T-cells are frequently encountered in patients with tuberculosis and healthy, PPD-positive persons (Harris, Vordermeier, Friscia, *et al.*, 1993; Jackett, Bothamley, Batra, *et al.*, 1988; Oftung, Mustafa, Husson, *et al.*, 1987; Surcel, Troye-Blomberg, Paulie, *et al.*, 1994).

University of Cape Town

Cytotoxic T-lymphocytes (CTL) specific for a 19kDa derived peptide can recognize and lyse MTB infected monocytes (Mohagheghpour, Gammon, Kawamura, *et al.*, 1998). These observations suggest that the 19kDa is available for immune recognition, and since secreted MTB antigens tend to be potent inducers of memory T-cell responses (Andersen, Askgaard, Ljungqvist, *et al.*, 1991), a number of 19kDa-based vaccination strategies have been devised.

Vaccines based on the 19kDa antigen. The current vaccine used to protect humans against TB, *M. bovis BCG*, elicits a type-1 response mediated by IFN-γ producing T-cells (Marchant, Goetghebuer, Ota, *et al.*, 1999; Ravn, Boesen, Pedersen, *et al.*, 1997). In the mouse model, exposure to MTB is followed by recruitment of IFN-γ producing lymphocytes to the site of infection (Flynn, Chan, Triebold, *et al.*, 1993). When mice are vaccinated with BCG and then challenged with MTB, accelerated recruitment of activated, IFN-γ producing T-lymphocytes to the site of infection is observed (Silva, Bonato, Lima, *et al.*, 1999). This is associated with a reduction in the tissue bacillary load but not with elimination of the infection.

University of Cape Town

Vaccination of mice with DNA encoding the 19kDa, or peptides derived from the 19kDa antigen, resulted in the induction of a type-1 response and generation of CTL (Erb, Kirman, Woodfield, *et al.*, 1998; Fonseca, Joosten, Snippe, *et al.*, 2000; Yeremeev, Lyadova, Nikonenko, *et al.*, 2000). This immune response, however, has failed to protect mice against MTB challenge (Erb, Kirman, Woodfield, *et al.*, 1998; Yeremeev, Lyadova, Nikonenko, *et al.*, 2000).

The saprophytic mycobacteria *M. vaccae* and *M. smegmatis*, when administered to mice as a vaccine, induce a short-lived type-1 T-cell response, as demonstrated by the ability of splenocytes to proliferate, produce IFN-γ, and mediate CTL activity in response to mycobacterial antigens (Skinner, Yuan, Prestidge, *et al.*, 1997). This immune response affords the animals some protection against MTB challenge (Abou-Zeid, Gares, Inwald, *et*

al., 1997; Yeremeev, Lyadova, Nikonenko, *et al.*, 2000). Since *M. vaccae* and *M. smegmatis* do not express the 19kDa antigen, it was anticipated that recombinant expression of the 19kDa lipoprotein on the surface of these mycobacteria might enhance the protective efficacy of these vaccine strains. However, the limited protection afforded by immunization with *M. vaccae* or *M. smegmatis* was abrogated when the 19kDa antigen was expressed by these strains (Abou-Zeid, Gares, Inwald, *et al.*, 1997; Yeremeev, Lyadova, Nikonenko, *et al.*, 2000). In addition, immunization of mice with the 19kDa-expressing strains failed to induce the accelerated recruitment of IFN-γ producing T-cells to the site of infection, and these mice were noted to have impaired delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) responses to intradermal PPD (Yeremeev, Lyadova, Nikonenko, *et al.*, 2000). Thus, the 19kDa antigen appeared to have an inhibitory effect on the generation of protective immunity.

We hypothesized that the immune inhibitory effect of the 19kDa antigen might be the result of impaired pro-inflammatory cytokine production or co-stimulatory molecule expression, or enhanced IL-10 production by infected antigen-presenting cells. In the studies presented in this chapter, we infected human monocyte-derived macrophages with *M. smegmatis* vector (*M. smegmatis*) or *M. smegmatis* that expressed the 19kDa antigen (*M. smegmatis* 19kDa), and measured TNF-α, IL-12, IL-6 and IL-10 production. The effect of post-translational modification of the 19kDa protein on cytokine production was also studied by infecting the cells with recombinant *M. smegmatis* that expressed non-O-glycosylated, non-acylated, or non-secreted 19kDa mutants. Surface expression of CD14, HLA-DR, and the co-stimulatory molecules CD40, CD80, and CD86 on uninfected, and *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa infected MDM was also compared.

University of Cape Town

4.3 RESULTS

Survival of *M. smegmatis* in cultures of human MDM. Peripheral blood monocytes from healthy volunteers were maintained in tissue culture for 6 days prior to infection with *M. smegmatis* (vector) or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa at an MOI of 3:1. Three hours post infection, cell cultures were pulsed with gentamycin which resulted in killing of the extra-cellular bacilli. At 5 h post infection, 22 to 56% (mean 36%) of the organisms had been phagocytosed, and culture medium was replaced by fresh medium without antibiotics. A progressive decline in the number of viable intracellular organisms was observed over the next 4 days. However, bacterial counts were similar for both strains throughout the experiments (Figure 4-1). MDM viability, as determined by trypan blue exclusion, was similar for uninfected, *M. smegmatis*-infected, and *M. smegmatis* 19kDa-infected cells (range, 79 to 97%). The morphological aspect of macrophages and phagocytosed bacilli examined by electron microscopy was also similar, with both *M. smegmatis* and *M. smegmatis* 19kDa residing in individual vacuoles surrounded by a double membrane (Figure 4-2).

Cytokine production by MDM following infection with *M. smegmatis* strains. Pro-inflammatory cytokine production by MDM following infection with *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa was measured in the culture supernatants (Figure 4-3). In response to infection, the kinetics of production of the various cytokines differed, and substantial donor to donor variability was observed in the absolute concentrations of cytokines (up to 8-fold differences in the concentrations of TNF-α and IL-10; and up to 100-fold differences for IL-6, and IL-12). The concentrations of TNF-α, IL-12, IL-6, and IL-10 were sufficiently elevated to be detectable at 24 h in all donors. However, to allow meaningful comparison of cytokine production by MDM in response to infection with either *M. smegmatis* strain, the results for each cytokine were normalized to the 24 h time point. When thus analyzed, infection with *M. smegmatis* 19kDa resulted, in each donor, on average in 2.1-fold (range 1.6

University of Cape Town

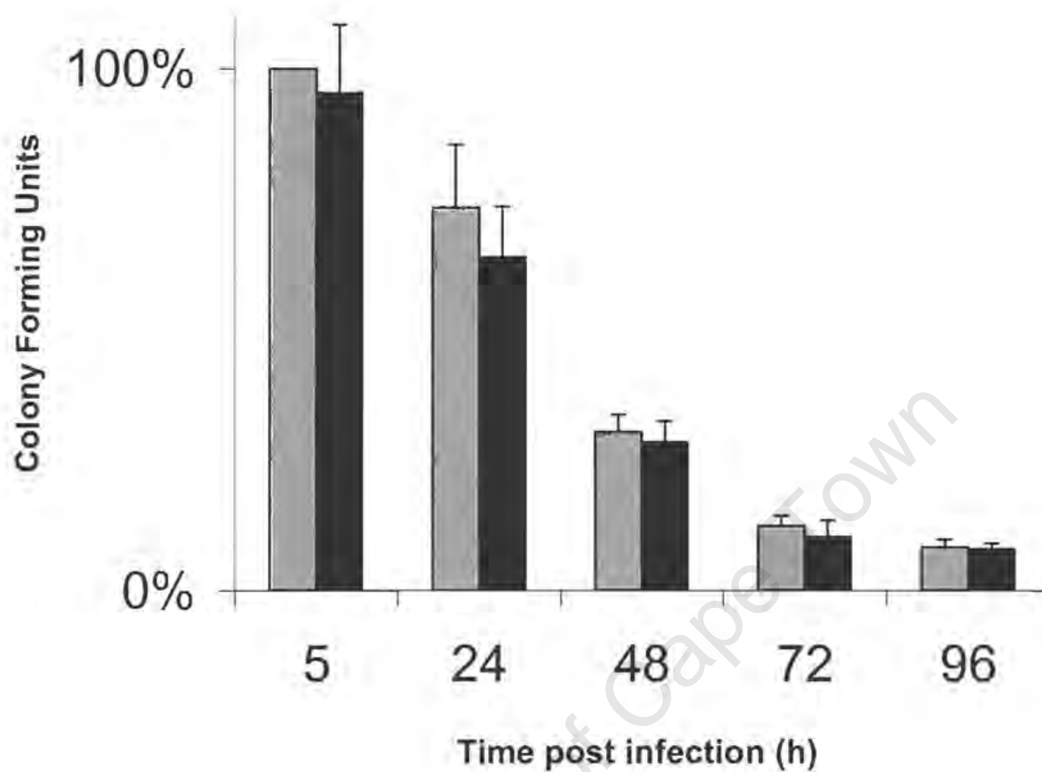


Figure 4-1 Number of intracellular viable mycobacteria following infection of MDM with *M. smegmatis* (vector) (gray bars) or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa (black bars). Cells were infected at an MOI of 3:1 for 3 h and pulsed with gentamycin for 2 h. The results are expressed as the percentage of CFU normalized to the number of CFU of *M. smegmatis* at 5 h. Results are means of six experiments done in duplicate or triplicate, carried out on monocytes of unrelated donors. Error bars indicate standard error of the mean.

University of Cape Town

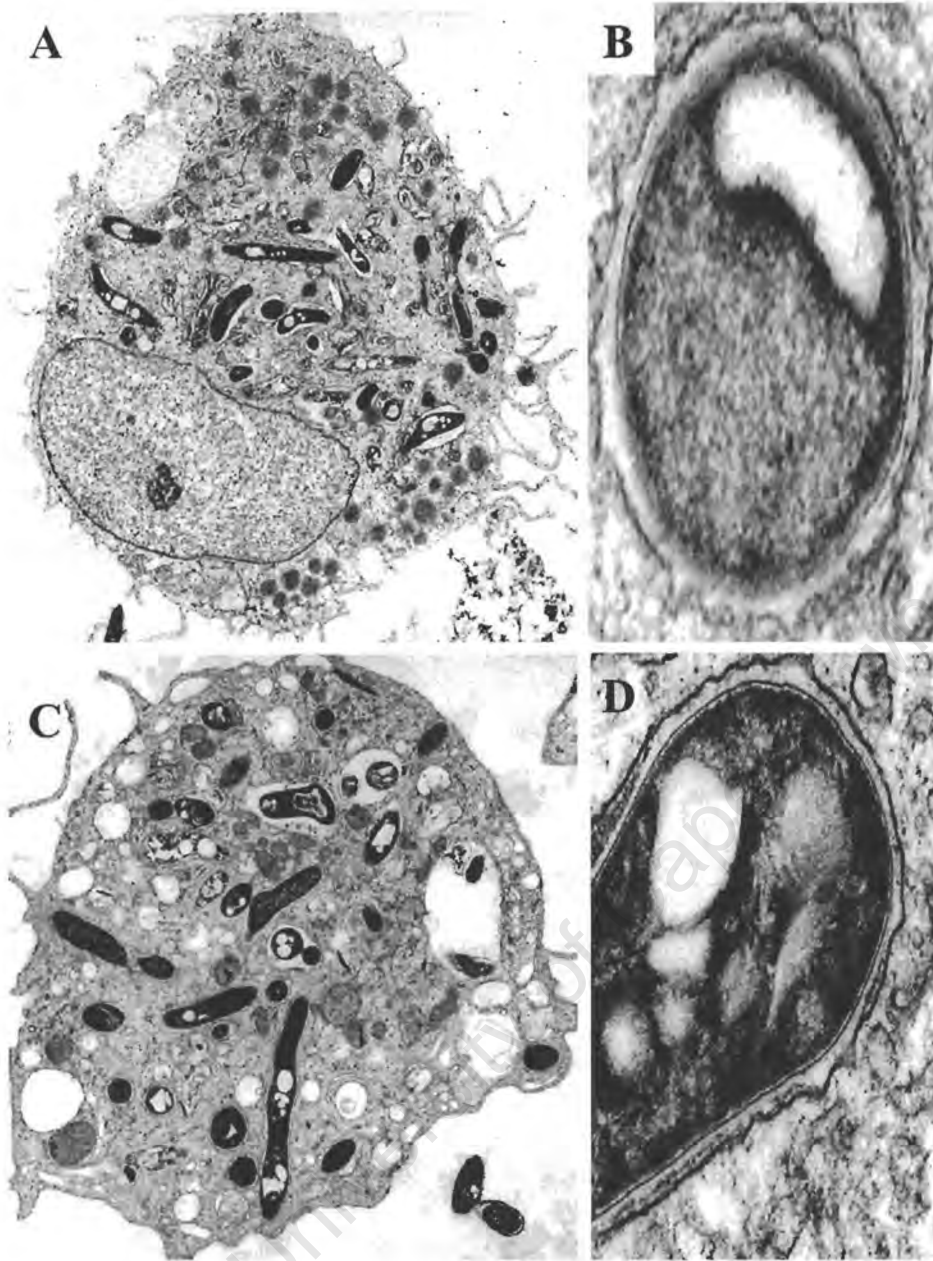


Figure 4-2 Electron micrographs of monocyte-derived macrophages 5h post infection with *M. smegmatis* (a, b) or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa (c, d). Both recombinant mycobacterial strains occupy individual vacuoles surrounded by tightly apposed, double membranes. Original magnification: 3300x (A), 13000x (B), 5000x (C), 26000x (D).

-2.5) reduced production of TNF-α ($P < 0.01$), IL-12 ($P < 0.05$), IL-6 ($P < 0.05$), and IL-10 ($P < 0.05$) compared to infection with *M. smegmatis* (Figure 4-3). Reduced production of TNF-α, IL-6, and IL-12, therefore, did not result from increased production of IL-10.

Effect of post-translational modification of the 19kDa antigen on cytokine production by MDM infected with *M. smegmatis* strains. To study the effect of acylation and glycosylation of the 19kDa antigen on cytokine production, MDM were infected with *M. smegmatis* expressing the complete glycosylated and acylated 19kDa molecule (*M. smegmatis* 19kDa), the non-O-glycosylated (*M. smegmatis* 19NOG), non-secreted (*M. smegmatis* 19NS), or non-acylated (*M. smegmatis* 19NA) forms of the 19kDa antigen, or *M. smegmatis* (vector). The inhibitory effect of the 19kDa on TNF-α and IL-12 production was observed only when the 19kDa antigen was both acylated and O-glycosylated (Figure 4-4).

University of Cape Town

Effect of the 19kDa antigen on co-stimulatory molecule expression and T-cell proliferation. Adherent MDM infected with *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa were detached at 24, 48, and 72 h post infection and analyzed for cell surface markers by flow cytometry. Comparative analysis of the mean fluorescent intensity for uninfected, *M. smegmatis*-infected, and *M. smegmatis* 19kDa-infected cells revealed an infection-induced down-regulation of CD14 and increased expression of CD40 and CD80, which reached a maximum at 48 h post infection (Figure 4-5). Down-regulation of CD14 and increased CD40 and CD80 expression were similar on *M. smegmatis* and *M. smegmatis* 19kDa infected cells. No significant difference in CD86 or HLA-DR expression was observed between uninfected MDM and MDM infected with *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa (Figure 4-5). When T-cells from PPD^+ individuals were exposed to autologous infected MDM, the recall proliferative responses were slightly higher (22% ± 16% higher) in the presence of *M. smegmatis* 19kDa than in the presence of *M. smegmatis*. These results suggest that the 19

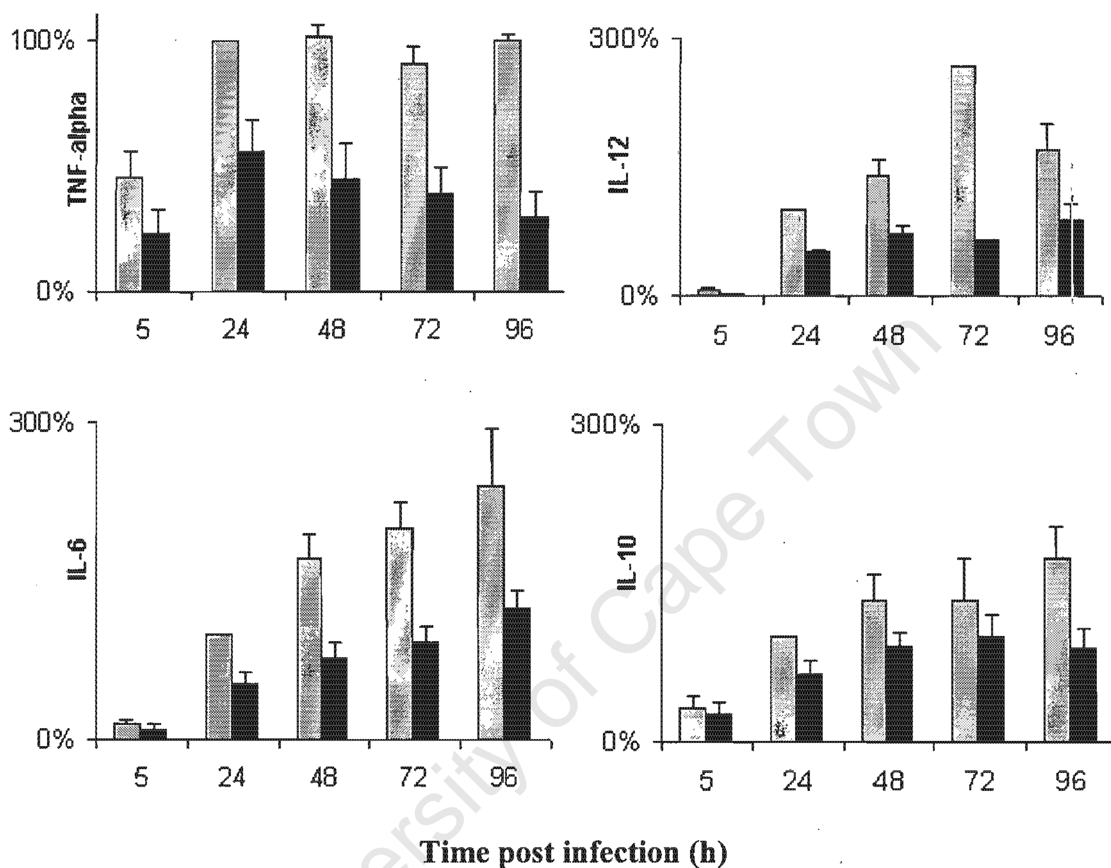
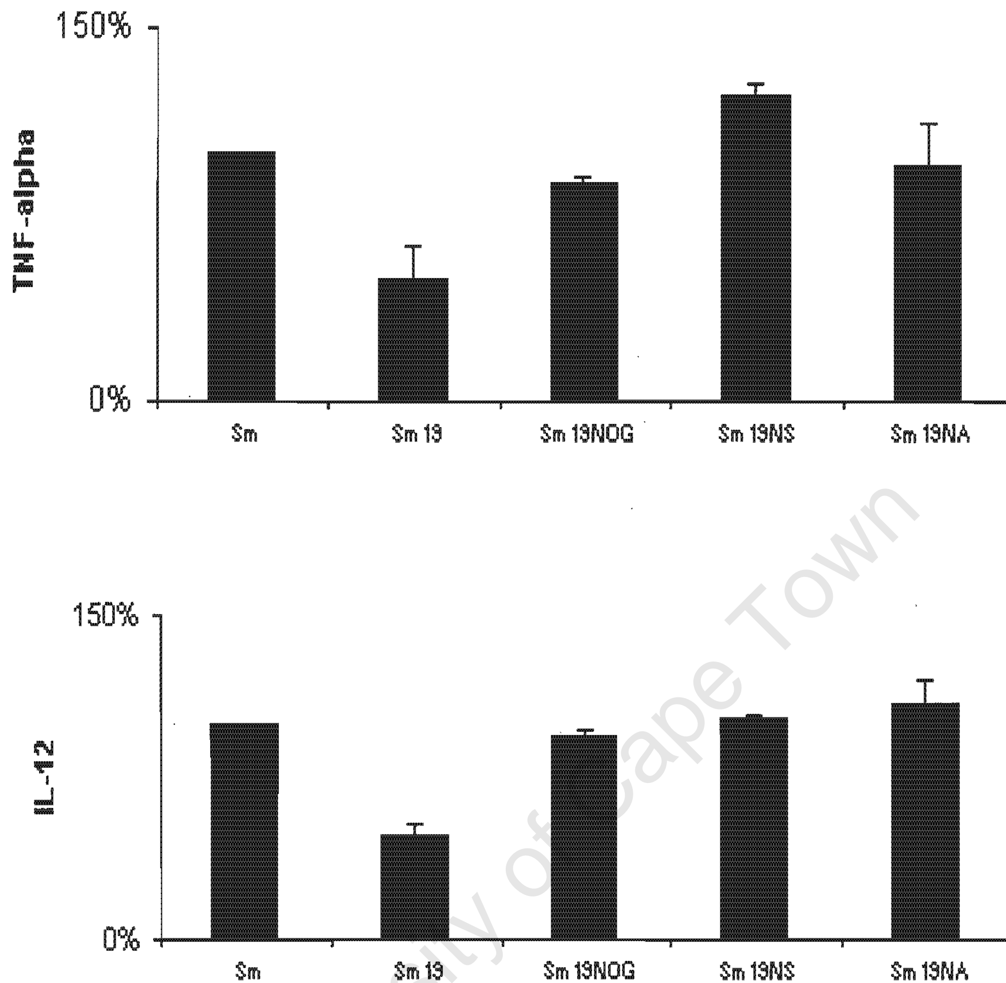


Figure 4-3 Cytokine production by MDM infected with *M. smegmatis* (grey bars) or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa (black bars). Cytokine production was normalized to the level of the relevant cytokine measured in the supernatants of *M. smegmatis* infected MDM at 24 h post infection. Results are presented as percent activity and represent the means of four to six experiments; error bars reflect the standard error of the mean.

University of Cape Town



University of Cape Town

Figure 4-4 Effect of post-translational modification of the 19kDa antigen on cytokine production. TNF-α (5 h post infection) and IL-12 (24 h post infection) production by MDM infected with *M. smegmatis* (Sm), *M. smegmatis* 19kDa (Sm 19), or *M. smegmatis* expressing non-O-glycosylated (Sm 19NOG), non-secreted (Sm 19NS) or non-acylated (Sm 19NA) forms of the 19kDa lipoprotein is shown. The results are shown as the means and standard error of the mean of three or four experiments; cytokine values are normalized to TNF-α or IL-12 production by *M. smegmatis* infected cells.

kDa antigen did not directly affect the expression of co-stimulatory molecules on MDM. The slight increases in *in vitro* T-cell proliferation may have been due to recognition of the 19kDa lipoprotein by T-cells previously sensitized during (asymptomatic) MTB infection or BCG vaccination.

Effect of exogenously added 19kDa antigen on cytokine production by MDM infected with *M. smegmatis* strains. We next investigated whether cytokine production by MDM could be modified by addition of purified recombinant or purified native 19kDa lipoprotein to the culture medium during infection with *M. smegmatis*. When different concentrations of recombinant 19kDa lipoprotein purified from whole-cell lysates (rWCL) were added to uninfected MDM, low levels of TNF-α were produced in a dose-dependent manner. When added to MDM infected with either *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa, rWCL at 100 ng/ml had no effect on TNF-α production (Figure 4-6). The extent of inhibition (~50%) of TNF-α production in the *M. smegmatis* 19kDa-infected cells compared to that in the *M. smegmatis*-infected MDM remained the same. Addition of recombinant 19-kDa antigen purified from culture filtrate (rCF) to uninfected MDM had no stimulatory effect on TNF-α production (Figure 4-6). When rCF at 100 ng/ml was added to MDM infected with *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa, the inhibitory effect on TNF-α production was minimal. When the purified native 19kDa antigen (100 ng/ml) was added to uninfected MDM, very low levels of TNF-α and no IL-12 were produced (Figure 4-6). Native lipoprotein added to MDM infected with *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa had little or no effect on TNF-α or IL-12 production. Taken together, these results suggest that exogenously added 19kDa antigen has only limited effects on cytokine production. It would appear that the 19kDa lipoprotein has to be intracellular and probably in the same cellular compartment as *M. smegmatis* 19kDa to exert its maximal inhibitory effect on MDM cytokine production.

University of Cape Town

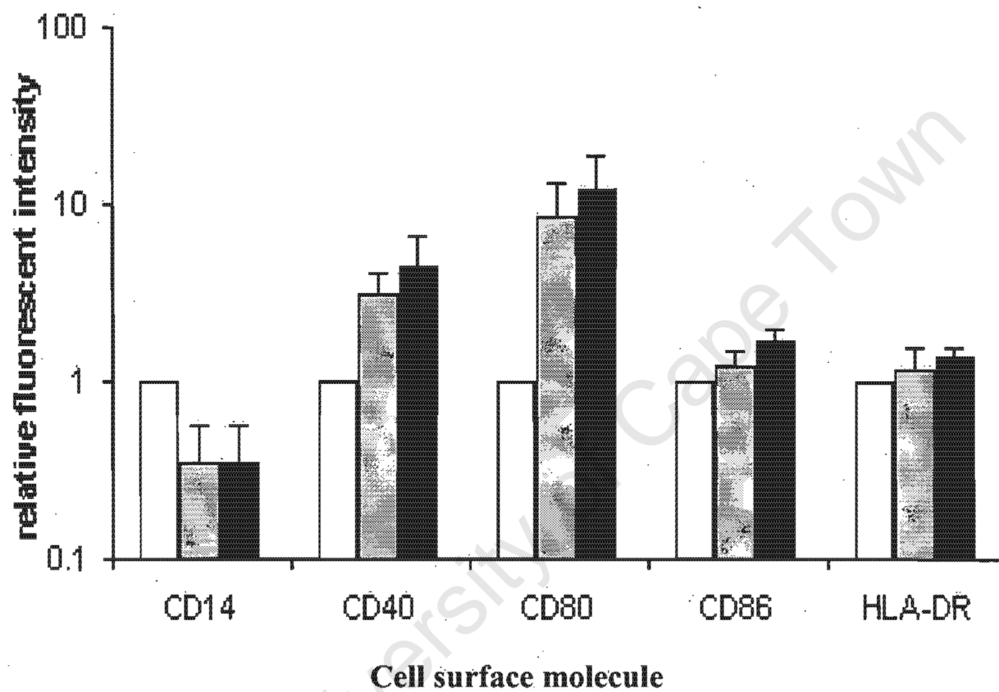
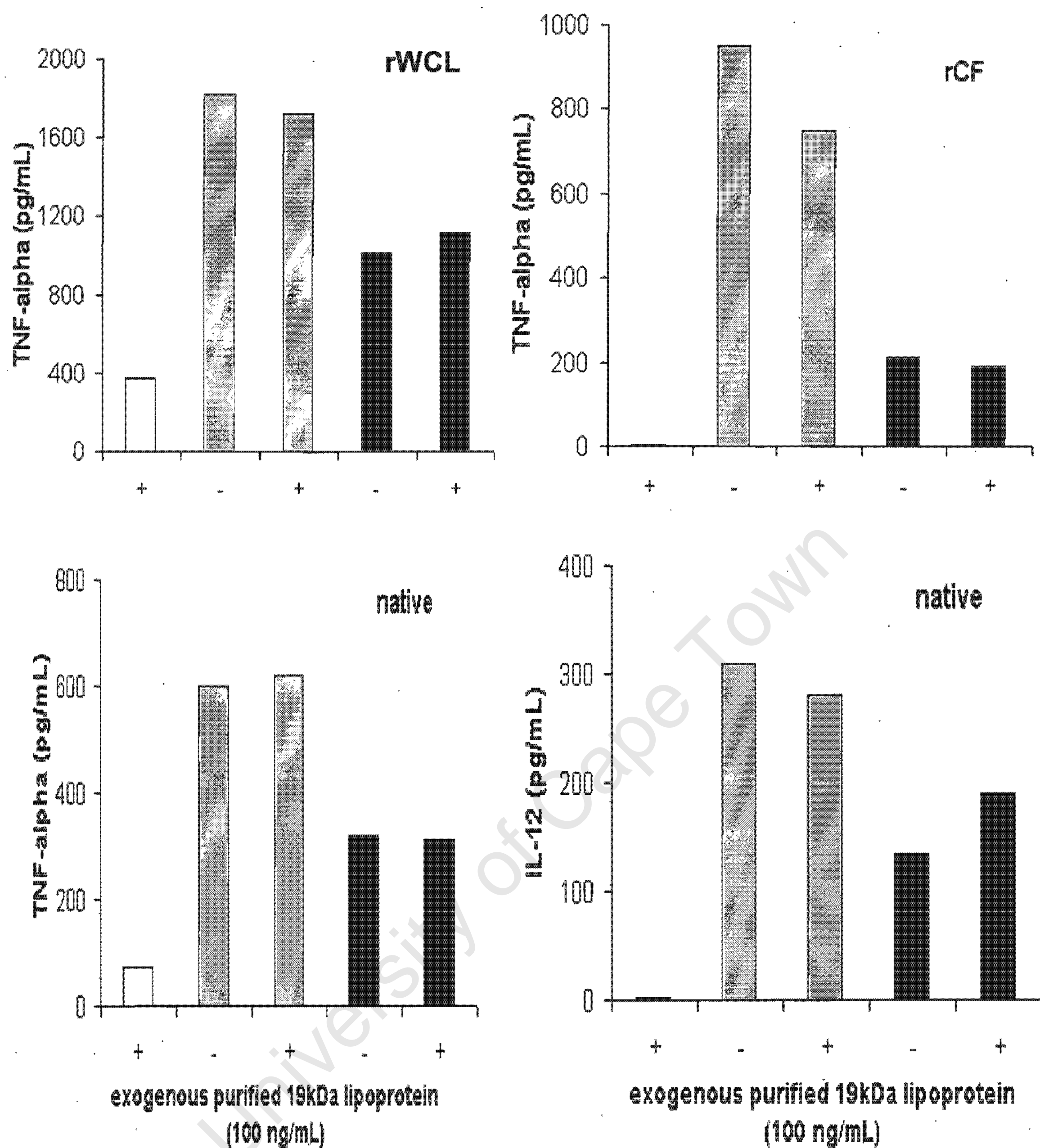


Figure 4-5 Expression of cell surface markers on uninfected MDM (open bars) or MDM infected for 48 h with *M. smegmatis* (gray bars) or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa (black bars). The results are normalized to the values for uninfected cells (set at 1) and are means and standard error of the mean of three experiments.



University of Cape Town

Figure 4-6 Effect of exogenously added 19kDa lipoprotein on TNF-α and IL-12 production by MDM. MDM were uninfected (open bars) or infected with *M. smegmatis* (gray bars) or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa (black bars) in the presence (+) or absence (-) of 100 ng of purified recombinant 19kDa protein per ml isolated from whole recombinant *M. smegmatis* 19kDa cell lysate (rWCL) or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa culture filtrate (rCF), or 19kDa protein purified from *M. tuberculosis* (native).

4.4 DISCUSSION

Protective immunity against MTB depends on IL-12 and TNF-α production to regulate T-cell activation and stimulation of mycobacteriostatic pathways within infected macrophages (Kaplan and Freedman, 1996). Following aerosol MTB infection, mice deficient in IL-12 have decreased and delayed expression of mRNA for IFN-γ, TNF-α, and inducible nitric oxide synthase in infected tissues and reduced lymphocyte recruitment to the site of infection, resulting in overwhelming tissue bacillary loads and early mortality (Cooper, Magram, Ferrante, *et al.*, 1997). When mice are treated with exogenous IL-12, enhanced, IFN-γ-dependent resistance to infection with MTB is observed (Cooper, Roberts, Rhoades, *et al.*, 1995; Flynn, Goldstein, Triebold, *et al.*, 1995). As a vaccine adjuvant, IL-12 enhances the development of a protective Th1 response (Afonso, Scharton, Vieira, *et al.*, 1994; Freidag, Melton, Collins, *et al.*, 2000), and when IL-12 DNA therapy is administered to MTB-infected mice, a phenotypic switch from Th2-type cytokine production to IFN-γ-secreting Th1-type cells is observed (Lowrie, Tascon, Bonato, *et al.*, 1999). Therefore, IL-12 is a key cytokine involved in establishing protective immunity against MTB.

A critical role in protection against murine tuberculosis has also been demonstrated for the pro-inflammatory cytokine TNF-α. Mice lacking TNF-α succumb to overwhelming MTB infection. In the absence TNF-α, delayed macrophage activation and chemokine expression result in impaired T-cell migration into granulomas despite the presence of adequate numbers of both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells in the liver and lungs (Bean, Roach, Briscoe, *et al.*, 1999; Flynn, Goldstein, Chan, *et al.*, 1995; Roach, Bean, Demangel, *et al.*, 2002). TNF-α has also been shown to enhance IFN-γ-induced production of reactive nitrogen intermediates *in vitro* (Flesch, Hess, Oswald, *et al.*, 1994). Recent studies have also suggested an important role for IL-6 in stimulating early IFN-γ production during MTB infection (Saunders, Frank, Orme, *et al.*, 2000) and in priming of T cells after vaccination with MTB

University of Cape Town

proteins (Leal, Smedegard, Andersen, *et al.*, 1999). We have shown here that following *in vitro* infection of human MDM with *M. smegmatis* expressing the MTB 19kDa lipoprotein, there is reduced production of the pro-inflammatory cytokines IL-12, TNF-α and IL-6. The inhibition of pro-inflammatory cytokine production by the 19kDa lipoprotein may be an explanation why *M. smegmatis* strains expressing the 19kDa antigen were ineffective as vaccines (Abou-Zeid, Gares, Inwald, *et al.*, 1997; Yeremeev, Lyadova, Nikonenko, *et al.*, 2000).

Experiments in which the 19kDa lipoprotein was used to elicit immune responses have yielded contrasting results. Some studies have reported antigen-specific IFN-γ production by splenocytes and a slightly increased survival time after MTB challenge in the case of a 19kDa DNA vaccine (Abou-Zeid, Gares, Inwald, *et al.*, 1997; Yeremeev, Lyadova, Nikonenko, *et al.*, 2000). A degree of protection against MTB challenge was also observed in mice immunized with a 19kDa recombinant vaccinia virus construct (Zhu, Venkataprasad, Ivanyi, *et al.*, 1997). Although Erb *et al.* could readily detect antibodies against the 19kDa lipoprotein following DNA vaccination, no proliferative or CTL activity was induced and protection against *M. bovis* BCG challenge was not achieved (Erb, Kirman, Woodfield, *et al.*, 1998), and T cells obtained from mice immunized with 19kDa-antigen-pulsed dendritic cells showed no antigen-specific IFN-γ production (Baird, Hart, Abernethy, *et al.*, 1995). Nonetheless, others have documented that a peptide fragment of the 19kDa antigen, presented to T cells by human dendritic cells *in vitro*, could induce HLA class I-restricted CTL activity (Mohagheghpour, Gammon, Kawamura, *et al.*, 1998).

A recent study showed the 19kDa antigen to be a ligand for the TLR-2 receptor, and stimulation of TLR-2 expressing THP-1 cells with purified 19kDa resulted in high IL-12 production (Brightbill, Libraty, Krutzik, *et al.*, 1999). In some of our experiments, we stimulated human MDM with purified 19kDa antigen. Although monocytes express high

University of Cape Town

levels of TLR2 (Kadowaki, Ho, Antonenko, *et al.*, 2001), we observed no IL-12 and only modest TNF-α production in response to purified 19kDa antigen, in contrast to the high levels of TNF-α and IL-12 produced in response to infection with recombinant *M. smegmatis* expressing the 19kDa antigen. The lack of IL-12 production in response to the purified antigen in our study might reflect a difference in biologic behavior between monocytes and macrophages, as suggested by a recent study (Stewart *et al.*, Tuberculosis: Integrating Host and Pathogen Biology, Taos, Jan 25-30, 2003. Abstract 240).

MTB has developed a number of mechanisms to impair effective generation of cell-mediated immunity by the infected host, including inhibition of pro-inflammatory cytokine production by macrophages (Nau, Richmond, Schlesinger, *et al.*, 2002; Nigou, Zelle-Rieser, Gilleron, *et al.*, 2001; Vankayalapati, Wizel, Weis, *et al.*, 2003), expression of antigen-presenting molecules (Giuliani, Prete, Graziani, *et al.*, 2001; Noss, Pai, Sellati, *et al.*, 2001), TLR mediated signaling (Means, Lien, Yoshimura, *et al.*, 1999) and dendritic cell maturation (Geijtenbeek, Van Vliet, Koppel, *et al.*, 2003). It is possible that the inhibitory effects of MTB on IL-12 production, as observed by Nau and colleagues, may have been mediated by the 19kDa antigen (Nau, Richmond, Schlesinger, *et al.*, 2002). We observed that intracellular *M. smegmatis* 19kDa had stronger immune-modulating effects than exogenously added 19kDa antigen, and that the intact 19kDa molecule was required for the immune-modulatory activity. Interestingly, a previous study showed that within 1 h of macrophage phagocytosis of *M. bovis* BCG, *M. tuberculosis*, or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa, the 19kDa lipoprotein traffics out from the phagosome by insertion into plasma membranes. This trafficking did not occur with mutant 19kDa lipoproteins that were non-acylated and non-glycosylated (Neyrolles, Gould, Gares, *et al.*, 2001). It is possible that the inhibition of cytokine production by *M. smegmatis* 19kDa seen here may require the 19kDa lipoprotein to be initially part of the same cellular compartment as the mycobacterium. This would allow the 19kDa lipoprotein to leave the

University of Cape Town

phagosome by insertion into the phagosome membrane, thereby gaining access to the regulatory pathways for cytokine production. The idea that an MTB component may affect host cell immune function by insertion into the cell membrane has been suggested in another system. Ting *et al.* have observed that MTB blocks human macrophage responses to IFN-γ by preventing the interaction of STAT1 with the transcriptional machinery in the nucleus (Ting, Kim, Cattamanchi, *et al.*, 1999). This may occur through sequestration of transcriptional co-activators at extra-nuclear sites adjacent to the phagosome membrane, and be mediated by a component of the mycobacterial cell wall. It is possible that the 19kDa lipoprotein may be such a component.

Any factor that contributes to the success of the pathogen by interfering with the host protective response can be considered a virulence factor for *M. tuberculosis*. Our observation that the 19kDa antigen influences host cytokine responses is compatible with a role for this protein in mycobacterial virulence. Additional data supporting this view were reported in a study in which a naturally occurring mutant of *M. tuberculosis* H37Rv (I 2646), which does not express the 19kDa antigen, showed reduced growth in B10 mice (Lathigra, Zhang, Hill, *et al.*, 1996). When this strain was transformed with the 19kDa antigen, increased bacterial loads were observed compared to those in the vector control. However, deletion or overexpression of the 19kDa antigen in BCG did not affect its protective efficacy against MTB challenge in mice (Yeremeev, Stewart, Neyrolles, *et al.*, 2000).

University of Cape Town

Chapter 5

IL-12 and TNF-α production in tuberculosis patients with different extents of pulmonary disease

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

5.1 ABSTRACT

In this chapter, we examined whether production of the pro-inflammatory cytokines interleukin-12 (IL-12) and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α) is associated with the severity of pulmonary disease in patients with tuberculosis (TB). Plasma cytokine levels were measured in patients who had limited or extensive disease on chest radiograph. Plasma IL-12 levels were higher in patients with limited pulmonary disease compared to patients with extensive disease ($p=0.02$). In addition, peripheral blood monocytes from patients with limited disease produced more IL-12, TNF-α and IL-6 in response to *in vitro* infection with *M. tuberculosis* (MTB) than monocytes from patients with extensive disease ($p<0.05$), and MTB grew faster in cultured monocytes from patients with extensive disease ($p<0.05$). Pro-inflammatory cytokine production and intracellular growth rates were inversely related among different MTB clinical isolates. Thus, enhanced pro-inflammatory cytokine production in response to MTB infection may reduce bacillary growth and restrict the extent of pulmonary disease in TB patients.

University of Cape Town

5.2 INTRODUCTION

An estimated 90% of humans infected with MTB do not develop clinical TB (Bloom and Murray, 1992). It is assumed that these individuals mount a cellular immune response to the bacilli that is essentially protective. Monocyte cytokines have been shown to be involved in the protective cellular immune response to MTB (Kaplan and Freedman, 1996). When mice are infected via the aerosol route with MTB, expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines including IL-12 and TNF-α mRNA at the site of disease in the lungs is observed (Moreira, Tsenova-Berkova, Wang, *et al.*, 1997). In addition, infection of mice with MTB CDC1551 (Valway, Sanchez, Shinnick, *et al.*, 1998), a clinical strain that induces high levels of IL-12 and TNF-α, results in early control of mycobacterial growth and prolonged survival of the

infected animals (Manca, Tsenova, Barry, *et al.*, 1999). In contrast, infection of mice with MTB clinical strain HN878 (Sreevatsan, Pan, Stockbauer, *et al.*, 1997) results in delayed and reduced IL-12 and TNF-α production, a 10 fold higher bacterial load in the lungs, and markedly impaired survival of the infected animals (Manca, Tsenova, Bergtold, *et al.*, 2001). When mice are genetically disabled in their ability to produce IL-12 or TNF-α, complete failure to control the growth of MTB in the lungs is observed, and these mice rapidly succumb to overwhelming mycobacterial infection (Bean, Roach, Briscoe, *et al.*, 1999; Cooper, Magram, Ferrante, *et al.*, 1997; Flynn, Goldstein, Chan, *et al.*, 1995). Thus, in MTB infected mice, a rapid and strong pro-inflammatory cytokine response in the lungs is associated with less severe disease.

Direct involvement of IL-12 and TNF-α in the host defense against TB in humans is suggested by the presence of mRNA for these cytokines within tuberculosis granulomas in infected lungs and lymph nodes (Bergeron, Bonay, Kambouchner, *et al.*, 1997; Fenhalls, Stevens, Bezuidenhout, *et al.*, 2002; Fenhalls, Wong, Bezuidenhout, *et al.*, 2000), and elevated concentrations of these proteins in TB pleural effusions, a disease manifestation which is often self limiting (Barnes, Fong, Brennan, *et al.*, 1990; Zhang, Gately, Wang, *et al.*, 1994). *In vitro,* IL-12 and TNF-α are readily produced by human monocytes in response to infection with MTB or following exposure to mycobacterial cell wall components (Brightbill, Libraty, Krutzik, *et al.*, 1999; Manca, Tsenova, Barry, *et al.*, 1999; Means, Jones, Schromm, *et al.*, 2001; Underhill, Ozinsky, Smith, *et al.*, 1999). Similar to what is noted in animal experiments, persons with genetic defects in the IL-12 signaling pathway, and patients who have received treatment with TNF-α neutralizing antibodies have been shown to be at increased risk of mycobacterial infections including TB (Altare, Durandy, Lammas, *et al.*, 1998; Altare, Ensser, Breiman, *et al.*, 2001; Altare, Lammas, Revy, *et al.*, 1998; de Jong,

University of Cape Town

Altare, Haagen, *et al.*, 1998; Keane, Gershon, Wise, *et al.*, 2001; Picard, Fieschi, Altare, *et al.*, 2002).

We hypothesized that impaired IL-12 and TNF-α production in response to MTB infection may be associated with more severe tuberculous lung disease in humans. The extent of lung disease was determined on pre-treatment chest radiographs, and plasma cytokine levels were measured. In addition, we evaluated cytokine production by the monocytes obtained from patients with limited or extensive pulmonary disease infected *in vitro* with MTB strains CDC1551 and HN878. The ability of these monocytes to control the growth of MTB *in vitro* was also analyzed.

5.3 RESULTS

Seventeen human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) seronegative patients with active pulmonary tuberculosis from Cape Town, South Africa, were randomly selected and recruited into the study. Patients included South African Black and Coloured (mixed ethnicity) males and females 18-62 years old (Table 5-1). Patients with prior TB, and those who had known risk factors for TB including drug-induced immune suppression, diabetes mellitus and pregnancy in females, were excluded. All patients had MTB isolated from sputum and none had received more than 4 weeks of short course chemotherapy (rifampin, isoniazid, pyrazinamide and ethambutol) at the time of sampling.

On the basis of the extent of disease on pretreatment chest radiographs, patients were classified as having limited or extensive disease. Patients in whom the pulmonary TB infiltrates were confined to the upper zones and/or apical segments of the lower lobes (typical post-primary infiltrates) were classified as having limited disease (n=8) as shown in Figures 5-1A and 5-1B. Patients were classified as having extensive disease when, in addition to upper zone infiltrates, radiographs revealed infiltrates in the lower and/or mid-zones (n=9)

University of Cape Town

Classification of Patients	No	Ethnicity	Age	Gender	Rx (d)	Pretreatment Chest Radiograph	
						No. of affected zones	cavitation
Limited Disease:	1	Coloured	37	M	12	3	yes
	2	Coloured	62	M	15	3	no
	3	Coloured	18	F	13	3	yes
	4	Coloured	37	M	20	2	yes
	5	Coloured	52	M	10	2	yes
	6	Black	52	M	13	1	no
	7	Coloured	61	M	19	2	yes
	8	Black	19	F	26	1	yes
		Mean ± SD	42 ± 17	--	16 ± 5	2.1 ± 0.8	--
Extensive Disease:	9	Coloured	28	M	0	6	yes
	10	Coloured	43	F	14	4	yes
	11	Black	55	M	7	6	yes
	12	Black	51	F	21	5	yes
	13	Coloured	36	M	15	5	yes
	14	Coloured	35	F	0	5	yes
	15	Black	30	M	7	4	yes
	16	Black	56	F	17	6	yes
	17	Coloured	37	F	9	4	yes
		Mean ± SD	41 ± 11	--	10 ± 7	5.0 ± 0.9	--

Table 5-1 Demographic and radiographic characteristics of the study subjects.

University of Cape Town

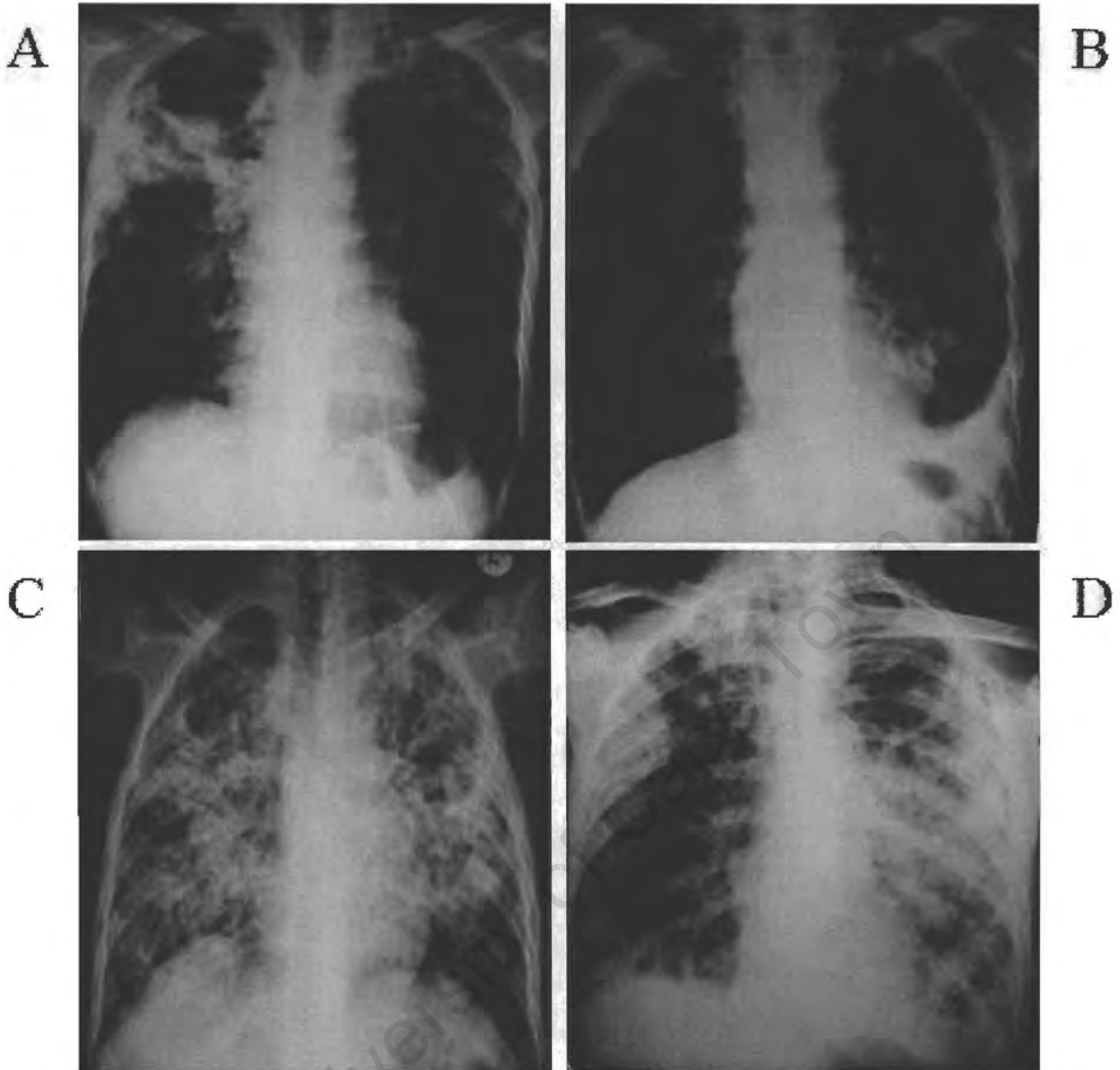


Figure 5-1 Examples of pre-treatment chest radiographs of patients classified as having limited (A, B) or extensive (C, D) tuberculosis disease.

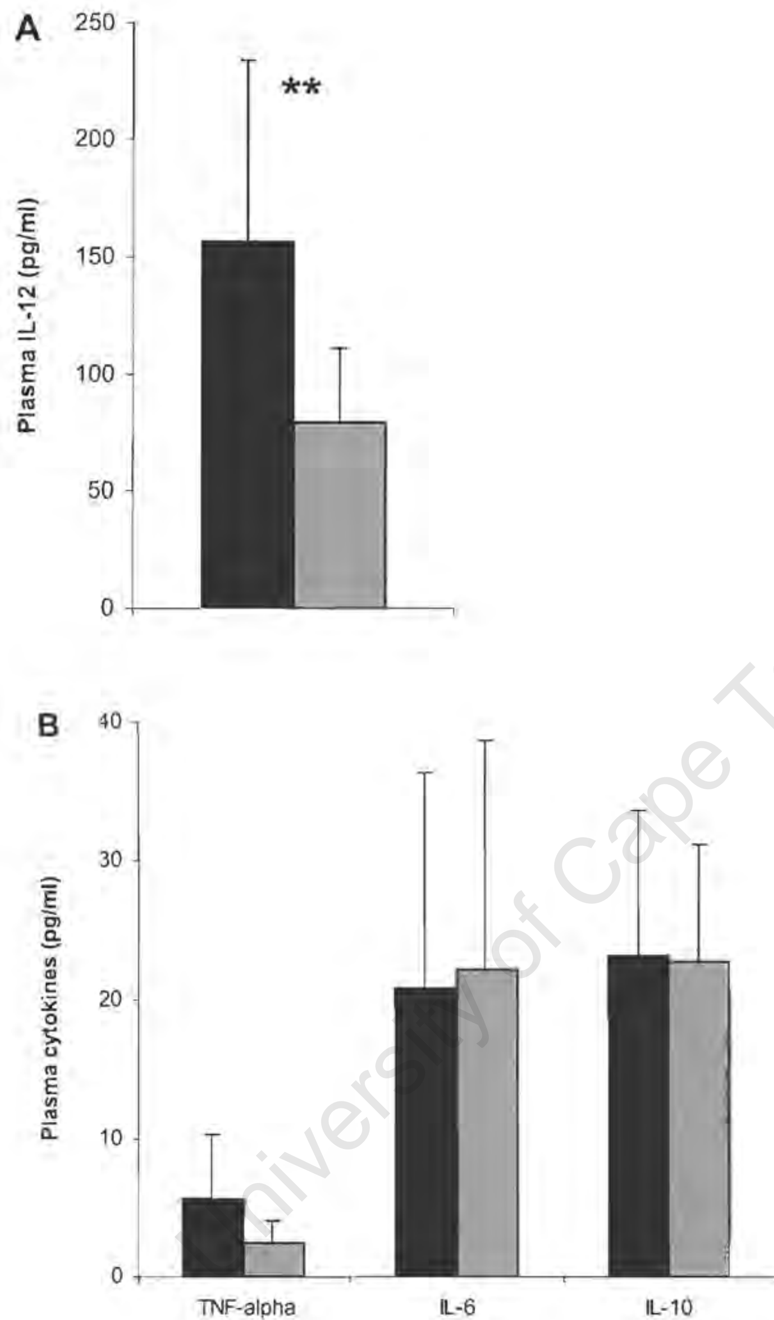
(Figures 5-1C and 5-1D). The mean number of lung zones involved in the group of patients with limited disease was 2.1 and in patients with extensive TB it was 5.0 ($p<0.0001$).

Plasma cytokine levels in patients with TB. Cytokine levels in plasma from patients with limited or extensive TB were measured by ELISA. IL-12 levels were 2-fold higher in patients with limited pulmonary disease compared to patients who had extensive TB ($p=0.02$) (Figure 5-2A). IL-6 and IL-10 levels were similar in the plasma of patients with limited and extensive disease. However, levels of TNF-α were somewhat higher ($p=0.12$) in plasma of patients with limited TB (Figure 2B). These results suggest that IL-12, and possibly TNF-α production may be increased in TB patients who have less extensive pulmonary disease.

Cytokine production by monocytes from patients with limited or extensive TB. Peripheral blood monocytes from some of the patients were infected with the MTB clinical isolates CDC1551 or HN878 *in vitro*, and release of IL-12 and TNF-α into the culture supernatants was measured. Up to 5 fold higher IL-12 production was observed when monocytes from patients with limited disease were infected with CDC1551 or HN878 (Figure 5-3A) compared to monocytes from patients with extensive disease ($p<0.05$). Monocytes from patients with limited disease also produced higher amounts of TNF-α ($p<0.05$) and IL-6 ($p<0.005$) (Figure 5-3B and 5-3C). When monocytes of the same patients were compared, infection with CDC1551 resulted in more IL-12 ($p=0.00003$), TNF-α ($p=0.009$), and IL-6 ($p=0.0005$) production than infection with HN878.

Replication of *M. tuberculosis* in monocytes from TB patients. We next examined the intracellular growth of MTB *in vitro* in monocytes from patients with limited or extensive disease. Growth rates were calculated from 24 h to 48 h post infection. Substantially faster growth of MTB was observed in monocytes obtained from patients with extensive disease. Mean replication times of CDC1551 within the monocytes from patients with limited disease

University of Cape Town



University of Cape Town

Figure 5-2 Plasma cytokine levels in patients with a pulmonary TB who have limited disease (n=8, black bars) or extensive disease (n=9, gray bars) on chest radiograph. Error bars indicate standard deviations. IL-12 levels in patients with limited disease were increased compared to patients with extensive TB (p=0.02).

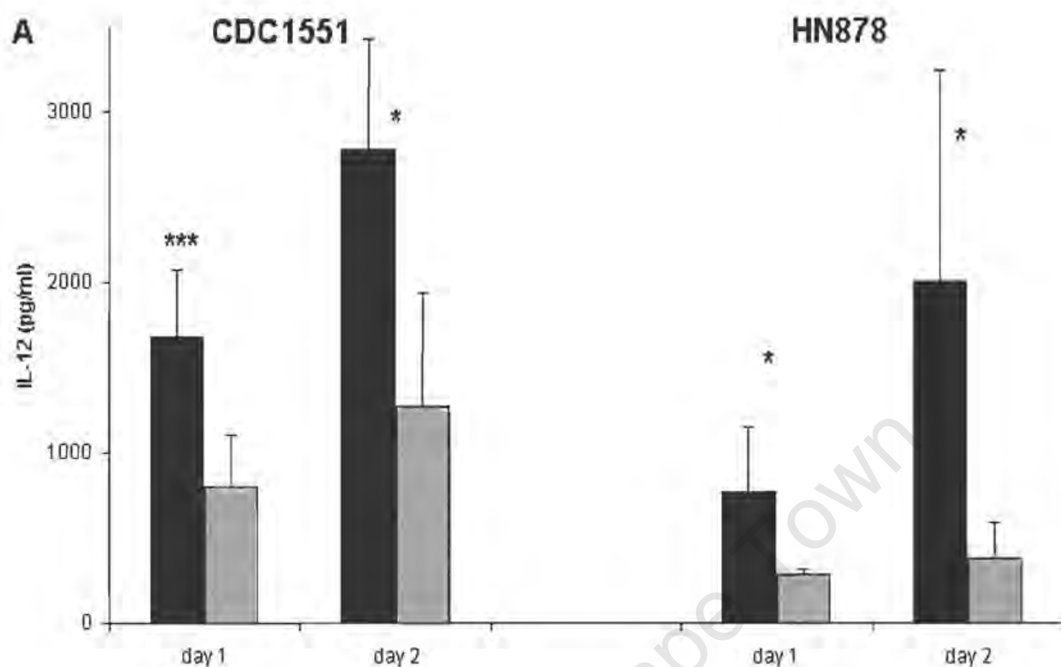
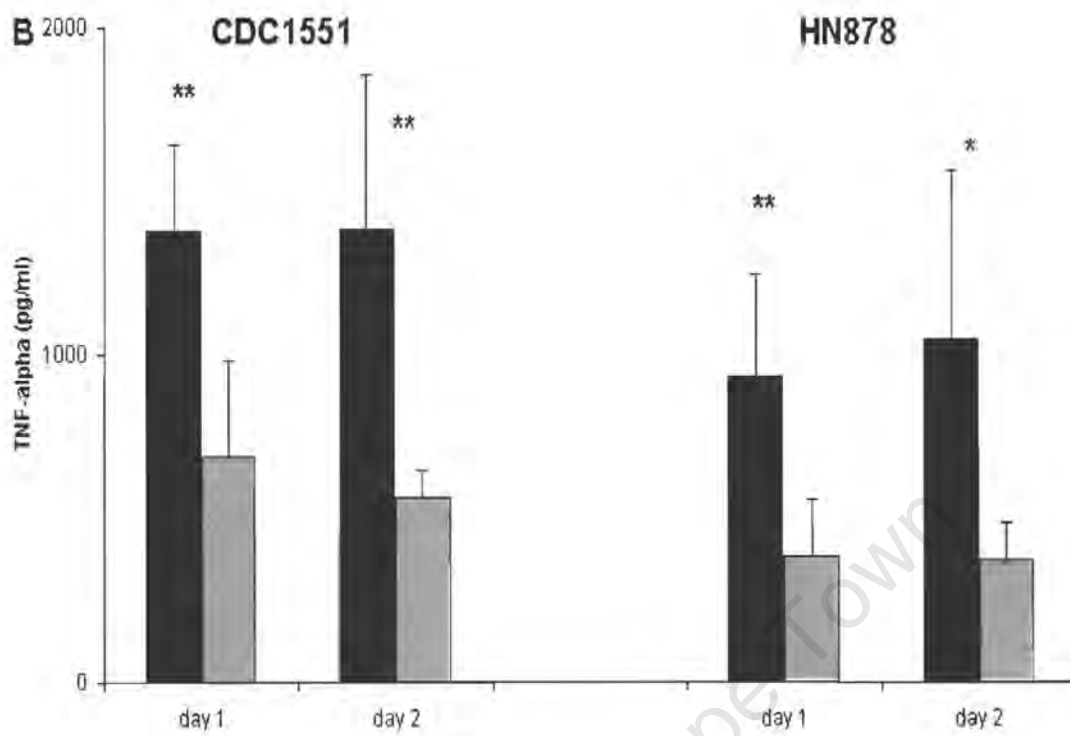
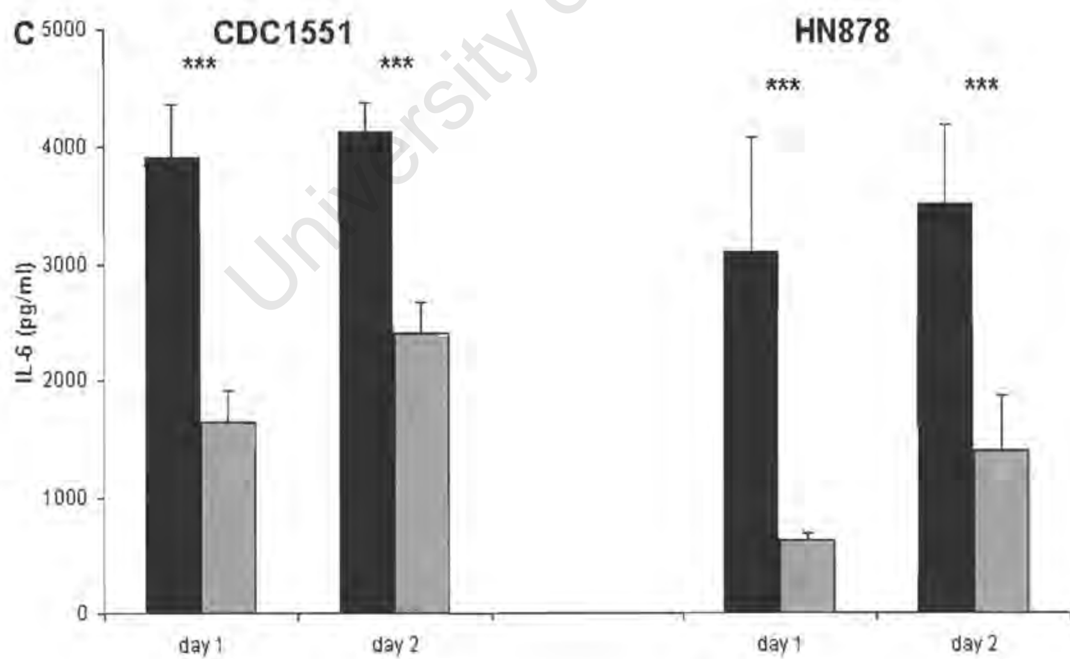


Figure 5-3 IL-12 (A), TNF-α (B) and IL-6 (C) production by freshly isolated monocytes from patients with limited disease (black bars) or from patients with extensive disease (gray bars), infected with MTB strains CDC1551 or HN878 *in vitro*. Supernatants from triplicate cultures were harvested on Day 1 and Day 2 post infection. The graphs display mean cytokine production by infected monocytes in a single representative experiment, using 2 patients with limited TB and 2 patients with extensive TB as a source of monocytes. Error bars indicate standard deviations.

Significance levels: * $p<0.05$, ** $p<0.01$ and *** $p<0.005$.

University of Cape Town





University of Cape Town

or extensive TB were 32.1 h and 20.3 h respectively (p=0.04); mean replication times of HN878 were 21.1 h and 16.6 h respectively (p=0.01) (Figure 5-4). When the intracellular growth of CDC1551 and HN878 was directly compared within monocytes of the same donor, HN878 was noted to replicate significantly faster (p=0.007).

5.4 DISCUSSION

In this study, we observed that more extensive pulmonary TB disease (more extensive lung involvement on chest radiograph) was associated with lower pro-inflammatory cytokine (IL-12, TNF-α and IL-6) production by monocytes in response to MTB. In addition, more extensive disease was associated with a reduced ability of patient monocytes to control mycobacterial replication. Faster replication within patient monocytes was also observed for the MTB isolate that induced lower cytokine production by these cells. Thus, an impaired ability of the host to mount a pro-inflammatory cytokine response and restrict mycobacterial growth *in vitro*, or infection with an MTB strain that induces low levels of these cytokines, may constitute risk factors for developing more severe disease.

University of Cape Town

The observation that a less robust cytokine response may be detrimental to the host is supported by a number of prior studies. Mice display more severe disease following infection with MTB strains that induce low levels of IL-12 and TNF-α (Manca, Tsenova, Barry, *et al.*, 1999; Manca, Tsenova, Bergtold, *et al.*, 2001). Patients with smear positive TB have been shown to have lower serum IL-12 levels than patients who have paucibacillary, smear negative disease (Verbon, Juffermans, Van Deventer, *et al.*, 1999). Also, patients with advanced pulmonary TB have been shown to have lower serum interferon-gamma (IFN-γ) levels than patients with mild or moderate disease as determined from chest radiograph (Dlugovitzky, Torres-Morales, Rateni, *et al.*, 1997). Lymphocytes from patients with more advanced disease also produced less IFN-γ in response to heat killed MTB (Sodhi, Gong,

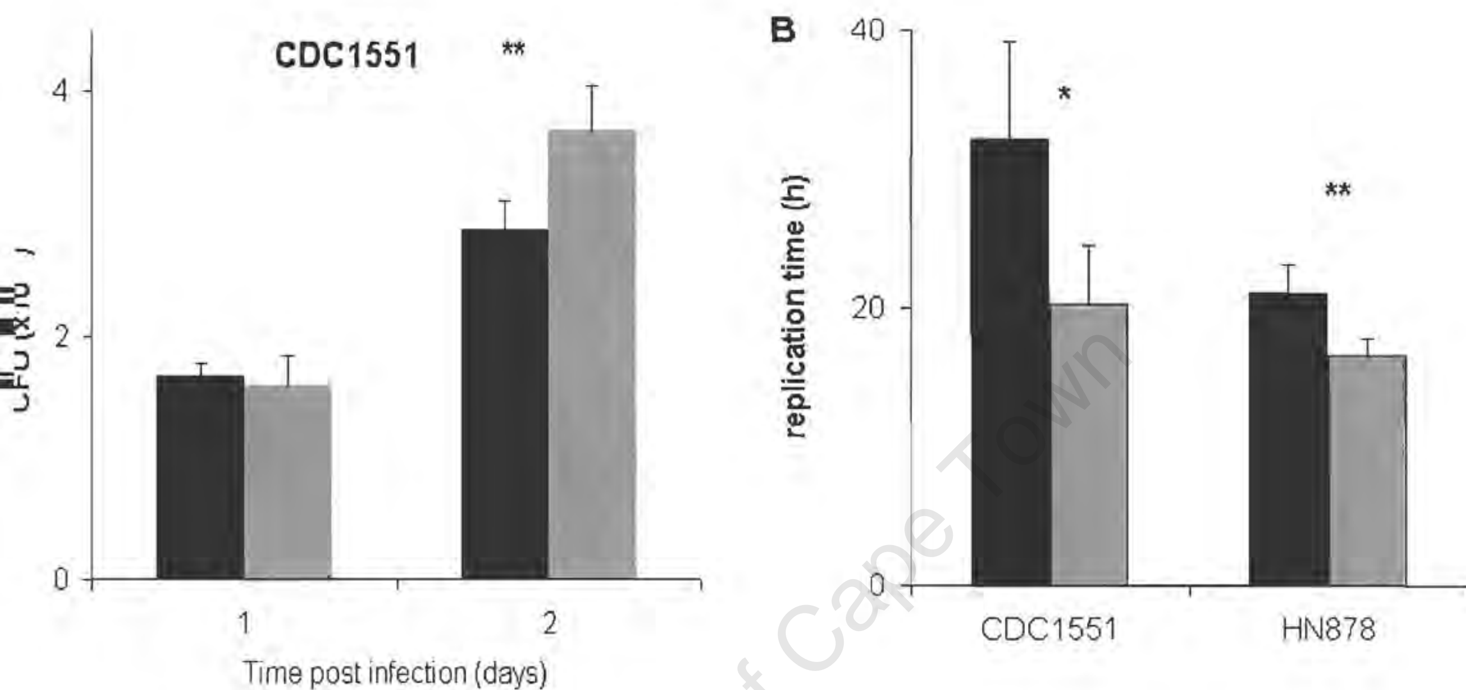


Figure 5-4 Intracellular growth of MTB in monocytes from patients with limited (n=5, black bars) or extensive (n=3, gray bars) TB. Faster growth of MTB CDC1551 and HN878 was observed in monocytes from patients with extensive TB. This resulted in higher numbers of colony forming units on Day 2 (A) and shortened replication times (B). Error bars indicate standard deviations; p values indicate significance levels: * $p<0.05$, ** $p<0.01$.

University of Cape Town

Silva, *et al.*, 1997). Thus, in mice and humans, activation of IL-12 production and signaling through the IL-12 receptor pathway may result in enhanced cell-mediated immunity and reduced TB disease. Indeed, administration of IL-12 to MTB infected mice reduces the bacterial load in infected tissues and improves survival (Flynn, Goldstein, Triebold, *et al.*, 1995). Recently, IL-12 administration was also shown to be beneficial in a patient with disseminated TB who was refractory to chemotherapy (Greinert, Ernst, Schlaak, *et al.*, 2001).

Several pathogens, including measles virus, *Histoplasma capsulatum*, *Leishmania major*, and human immunodeficiency virus have developed mechanisms to impair the host IL-12 response (Mosser and Karp, 1999; Nau, Richmond, Schlesinger, *et al.*, 2002). Two such mechanisms have been described for MTB. Mannosylated lipoarabinomannan (ManLAM), a compound of the mycobacterial cell wall, was shown to inhibit IL-12 and TNF-α induction in LPS-stimulated human mononuclear phagocytes through increased SHP-1 tyrosine phosphatase activity (Knutson, Hmama, Herrera-Velit, *et al.*, 1998). In addition, the 19-kDa lipoprotein, an antigen secreted by MTB, was shown to inhibit IL-12 and TNF-α production by recombinant *M. smegmatis* (Post, Manca, Neyrolles, *et al.*, 2001). Of interest, both the 19kDa antigen and ManLAM required acyl moieties to inhibit cytokine production (Nigou, Zelle-Rieser, Gilleron, *et al.*, 2001; Post, Manca, Neyrolles, *et al.*, 2001). It is possible that monocytes from patients with limited and extensive TB display differential susceptibility to the inhibitory effects of these MTB molecules on cytokine production. Alternatively, impaired TNF-α and IL-6 production by monocytes from patients with extensive disease may have resulted in decreased cellular activation and impaired innate resistance to intracellular mycobacterial growth (Flesch and Kaufmann, 1990; Hirsch, Ellner, Russell, *et al.*, 1994).

One previous study reported higher IL-12 and TNF-α concentrations following *in vitro* stimulation of PBMC isolated from patients with advanced TB compared to cells from

University of Cape Town

patients with moderately advanced disease (Dlugovitzky, Bay, Rateni, *et al.*, 2000). Plasma cytokine levels were not measured in that study nor were patients with early or limited disease included. In the present study, the inclusion of patients across a wider age spectrum, the use of a different clinical and radiographic classification and alternative methods for *in vitro* cytokine induction, may have contributed to an apparent difference between our results and the observations made in the study by Dlugovitzky *et al.* (Dlugovitzky, Bay, Rateni, *et al.*, 2000). Earlier observations by these authors, however, suggested that patients with advanced TB have elevated serum IL-10 levels (Dlugovitzky, Torres-Morales, Rateni, *et al.*, 1997), an inhibitory cytokine that may have contributed to the impaired IL-12 production observed in our patients with advanced disease (Trinchieri, 1997).

The HN878 isolate is a member of the MTB W-Beijing family of strains (Bifani, Mathema, Kurepina, *et al.*, 2002). Epidemiological surveys suggest that isolates belonging to the W-Beijing family may be more transmissible. It is interesting to observe that *in vitro* infection of patient monocytes with the HN878 strain resulted in impaired cytokine production and faster intracellular replication. Our study raises the possibility that patients infected with specific W-Beijing isolates may have more extensive lung disease and an increased bacillary burden. Increased numbers of bacilli in sputum would favor more efficient transmission of these MTB isolates.

The optimal cytokine response that follows infection with MTB and results in protective immunity in most individuals remains to be defined. Studies comparing innate immune responses to MTB in latently infected persons and in patients with reactivation disease may elucidate whether impaired IL-12 and TNF-α responses are also associated with progression from latent TB infection to clinically overt tuberculosis.

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

Chapter 6

Growth of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* at the surface of the cavity reflects a microenvironment with failed immunity

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

6.1 ABSTRACT

Protective immunity against pulmonary tuberculosis (TB) is characterized by the formation of granulomas consisting of macrophages and activated T-cells producing tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α) and interferon gamma (IFN-γ), both of which are required for the activation of the phagocytes. In 90% of immune competent humans, this response controls the infection. To understand why immunity fails in the other 10% we studied the lungs of six patients who underwent surgery for incurable TB. Histologic examination of different lesions of the affected lungs revealed numerous acid-fast bacilli only at the luminal surface of the cavities. The mutation profile of these isolates suggested that a single founder strain of *M. tuberculosis* (MTB) may undergo genetic changes during treatment, leading to the acquisition of drug resistance independently in discrete physical locales. Additional drug resistance was preferentially observed at the cavity surface. An analysis of cytokine gene expression revealed that failure to control the bacilli was not associated with a generalized suppression of cellular immunity since cytokine mRNA was up regulated in all lesions tested. Rather, a selective absence of $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells was noted at the luminal surface of the cavity, thereby preventing direct T-cell-macrophage interactions allowing phagocytes to remain permissive for bacillary growth. In contrast, at the other side of the necrotic zone of the granulomas, the two cell types were co-localized, and the paucity of bacilli in these macrophages suggests that in this microenvironment an efficient bacteriostatic/bacteriocidal phagocyte population was generated. The observed blunting of MTB stress responses in the bacilli at the surface of the cavity further supports the concept that this area represents a microenvironment with failed anti-mycobacterial immunity.

University of Cape Town

6.2 INTRODUCTION

Mycobacterium tuberculosis is an extremely successful pathogen spreading from individual to individual via the aerosolization of infectious nuclei droplets. The infectious particles are released from the lungs of patients with cavitary pulmonary disease while coughing. Once inhaled and phagocytosed by resident alveolar macrophages, the tubercle bacilli elicit the production of soluble effector molecules including the cytokines TNF-α and interleukin 12 (IL-12) as well as a large number of chemokines (Henderson, Watkins and Flynn, 1997; Manca, Tsenova, Barry, *et al.*, 1999; Roach, Bean, Demangel, *et al.*, 2002). These molecules regulate the development of the host cellular immune response that presumably controls the infection in the majority (90%) of immunocompetent individuals (Bloom and Murray, 1992).

Protective immunity is characterized by the formation of granulomas at the site of infection. These tumor-like aggregates consist primarily of activated MTB-infected macrophages and T-cells. In the mouse model of MTB infection, the maturation and maintenance of granulomas, and the control of bacillary replication within macrophages is dependent upon the continued production of TNF-α and IFN-γ by macrophages and activated T-cells respectively (Bean, Roach, Briscoe, *et al.*, 1999; Cooper, Dalton, Stewart, *et al.*, 1993; Flynn, Chan, Triebold, *et al.*, 1993; Flynn, Goldstein, Chan, *et al.*, 1995), and the expression of inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) in infected macrophages (Chan, Xing, Magliozzo, *et al.*, 1992; MacMicking, North, LaCourse, *et al.*, 1997). In mice, $CD4^+$ T-lymphocytes are the principal mediators of resistance to TB, and $CD8^+$ T-lymphocytes have been shown to contribute to this resistance (Mogues, Goodrich, Ryan, *et al.*, 2001). An important role for $CD4^+$ T-cells in protecting the human host from TB is underscored by the marked susceptibility to TB of patients with advanced HIV-induced $CD4^+$ T-cell depletion (Daley, Small, Schecter, *et al.*, 1992; Di Perri, Cruciani, Danzi, *et al.*, 1989; Selwyn, Hartel, Lewis, *et al.*, 1989). In addition, human $CD4^+$ T-cells and $CD8^+$ T-cells may induce death of

University of Cape Town

MTB infected macrophages, resulting in reduced viability of the bacilli (Dieli, Troye-Blomberg, Ivanyi, *et al.*, 2000; Oddo, Renno, Attinger, *et al.*, 1998; Stenger, Mazzaccaro, Uyemura, *et al.*, 1997).

In 10% of immunocompetent persons, the infection is not contained by the host immune response. Why protective immunity fails in these individuals is not understood. Progressive bacillary replication results in disease manifestations, tissue necrosis and cavity formation (Medlar, 1955). The host immune response directed at the infecting bacilli is believed to be the main cause of tissue necrosis, which may be the result of cytokine-mediated toxicity as well as the release of activated proteolytic enzymes by macrophages (Chang, Wysocki, Tchou-Wong, *et al.*, 1996; Condos, Rom, Liu, *et al.*, 1998; Schluger and Rom, 1998). Most TB patients, however, respond to antibiotic treatment by clearance of the bacilli from the sputum, partial reversal of the granulomatous inflammatory process, and successful clinical cure. In patients that fail to respond to chemotherapy, including patients with multi-drug resistant (MDR) TB, chronic progressive disease may be observed. Pneumonectomy is sometimes employed in these patients in an attempt to reduce the bacillary load in the lungs, to achieve sputum conversion, and/or to reduce spread of the infection to the remaining healthy lung. In others, surgery may be performed to reduce the life threatening complications of TB such as severe hemoptysis (Blumberg, Burman, Chaisson, *et al.*, 2003; van Leuven, De Groot, Shean, *et al.*, 1997).

To better understand the etiology of progressive chronic TB, we studied the lungs of six patients who underwent surgery for incurable TB and/or complications related to their TB. The excised lung tissue from these patients provided a unique opportunity to study the pathogenic process that occurs during long-term antibiotic therapy and disease progression. By studying the histology, immunohistology, host cellular immune response, and by

University of Cape Town

characterizing the bacterial populations present as well as the gene expression of MTB in situ, we hoped to gain insight into the dynamics of the infectious process.

6.3 RESULTS

Patients. Six patients who underwent pulmonary resection for complications arising from TB were studied. All six patients had unilateral lung disease with (almost) complete destruction of the affected lung (Figure 6-1). Three patients (two of whom had MDR-TB) underwent surgery for chronic, sputum positive TB despite 18-24 months of supervised multi-drug therapy (Table 6-1). The other three patients who were culture negative at the time of surgery all had a history of pulmonary tuberculosis. These patients had presented with hemoptysis and other symptoms suggestive of relapse, and had received empirical treatment for TB for 7-15 months. Lung resection in these patients was performed to relieve ongoing hemoptysis thought to have arisen from a focus in the destroyed lung. Sputum cultures from these three patients at the time of presentation, however, failed to yield *M. tuberculosis* (Table 6-1). All patients received TB therapy up until the time of surgery, and none of the patients was co-infected with HIV.

Presence of mycobacteria in lesions obtained from the resected lungs. The lungs of all six patients revealed evidence of tuberculosis, with cavitation, fibrosis, nodules, granulomas and bronchiectasis. Macroscopic caseation (Figure 6-1) was only observed in patients with active tuberculosis (Patients #1-3, Table 6-1). Dissection of the lungs allowed us to identify and sample a number of macroscopically distinct lesions (2-6 per patient) and, in some cases, lung tissue which appeared uninvolved (Table 6-2). Each lesion was examined for the presence of acid-fast bacilli (AFB), and categorized according to its continuity with the airways. AFB were almost exclusively observed in the lesions of patients with sputum-

University of Cape Town

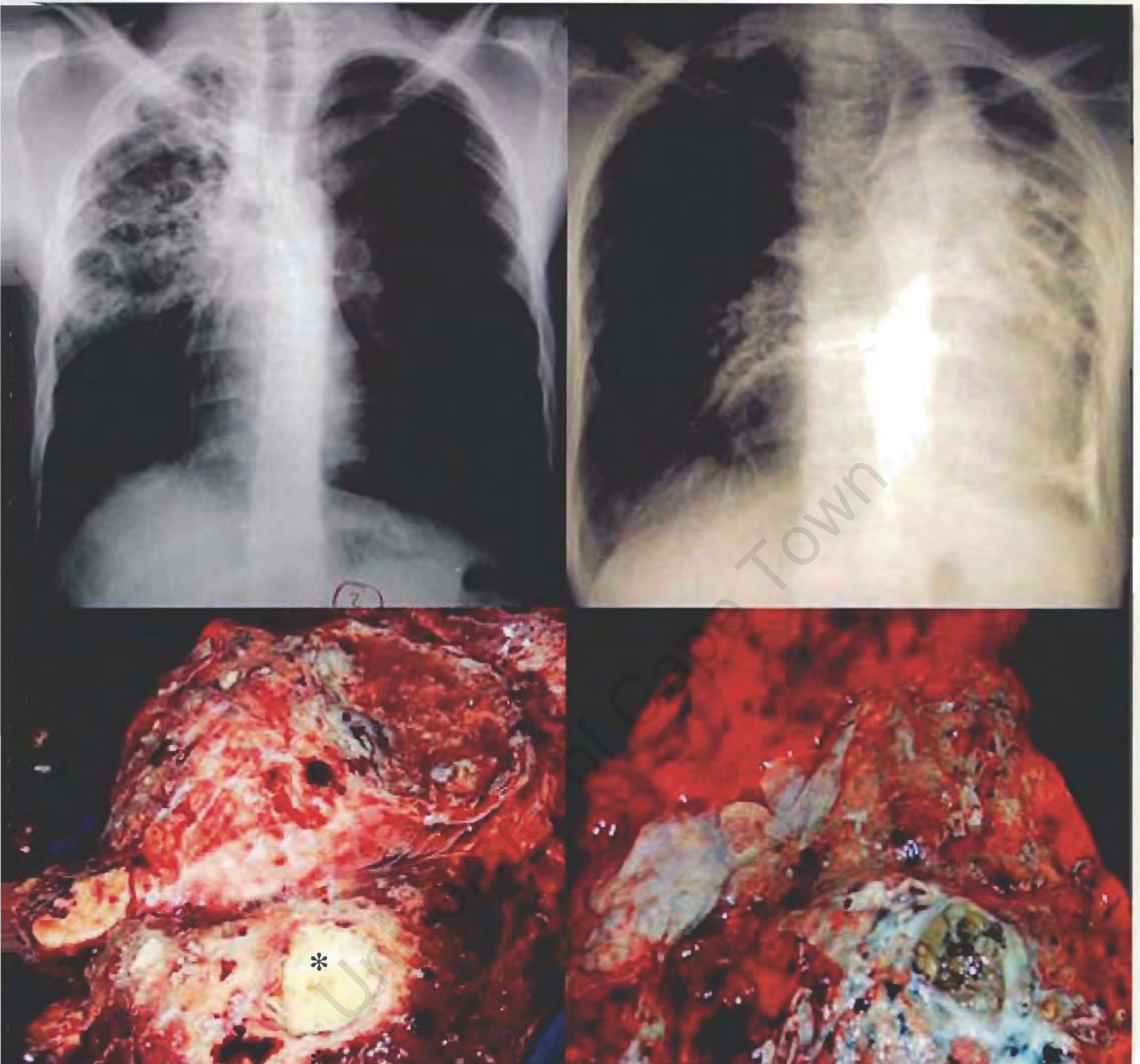

University of Cape Town

Figure 6-1 Pre-operative chest radiographs and resected lungs of patients #2 (left) and #5 (right). The resected lungs were almost entirely destroyed. Both lungs contained areas of cavitation, fibrosis, nodules and granulomas with central necrosis, but only the lungs of patients with active disease contained caseous necrosis (*).

Patient #	Age	Gender	Anti-TB Treatment at Surgery		Sputum**		Indication	Macroscopic			
			Drugs	Months	Smear	Culture	for Surgery	Description	Caseation	Cavitation	Fibrosis
1	19	F	R H Z E S	18	pos	pos	persistent TB	destroyed L lung	Y	Y	Y
2*	17	M	R H Z E S Et Th Km Of	18	pos	pos	persistent TB	destroyed R lung	Y	Y	Y
3*	35	M	R H Z E Et Th Km Of Cl	24	pos	pos	persistent TB	destroyed L lung	Y	Y	Y
4	54	M	R H Z E	7	neg	neg	hemoptysis	destroyed L lung	N	Y	Y
5	59	F	R H Z E	9	neg	neg	hemoptysis	destroyed L lung	N	Y	Y
6	45	M	R H Z E	15	neg	neg	hemoptysis	destroyed L lung	N	Y	Y

*MDR-TB; **at the time of surgery

R=rifampin; H=isoniazid; Z=pyrazinamide; E=ethambutol; S=streptomycin; Et=ethionamide; Th=thiacetazone; Km=kanamycin; Of=ofoxacin; Cl=clofazamine

Table 6-1 Characteristics of the patients and classification of their TB disease.

University of Cape Town

positive disease. *M. tuberculosis* was cultured from all lesions of sputum-positive patients, and from none of the lesions of sputum negative subjects.

Genetic analysis of *M. tuberculosis* cultures obtained from the lesions of the resected lungs. Genetic analysis was carried out on all isolates cultured from pre-operative sputum samples and lung lesions. IS*6110*-based RFLP analysis revealed a homogenous bacterial population and no evidence of mixed infection in each of the three patients with active disease (Figure 6-2). In contrast, sequence analysis of several genes implicated in drug resistance revealed heterogeneity in the resistance-associated alleles among the isolates recovered from different lung lesions of the same patient (Table 6-2). For example, the isolate cultured from the upper lobe cavity of patient #1 contained the K43R resistance mutation in the genetic target of streptomycin (*rpsL*), whereas the wild type gene was present in the isolate obtained from sputum as well as a closed, lower lobe granuloma (Table 6-2). Moreover, in the lung from patient #2, two mutations in the fluoroquinolone resistance associated gene *gyrA* (D89N and D94G) were found in all 3 isolates obtained from the open lesions, whereas the bacilli from the sputum and the 2 closed lesions bore wild type *gyrA* alleles. Most strikingly, patient #3 had three discrete bacillary populations identified with different alleles of the resistance-associated genes. Apparently normal lung tissue from this patient contained few *M. tuberculosis* isolates and these bore the wild type alleles in the *katG* (a target for INH), *embB* (a target for EMB) and *rrs* (a target for amino glycosides) genes. Bacteria isolated from the sputum of patient #3 and from four other pathologic sites of the lung had identical *katG* (S315T) and *embB* (M306V) mutations but were wild type for *rrs*. A sixth site contained bacilli that, in addition to the *katG* and *embB* mutations, had acquired a resistance mutation (G1484T) in the *rrs* gene. The mutation profiles of these isolates suggest that the acquisition of drug resistance is a dynamic process whereby an initial infecting strain may spread from one pulmonary site to another becoming the founder for acquisition of

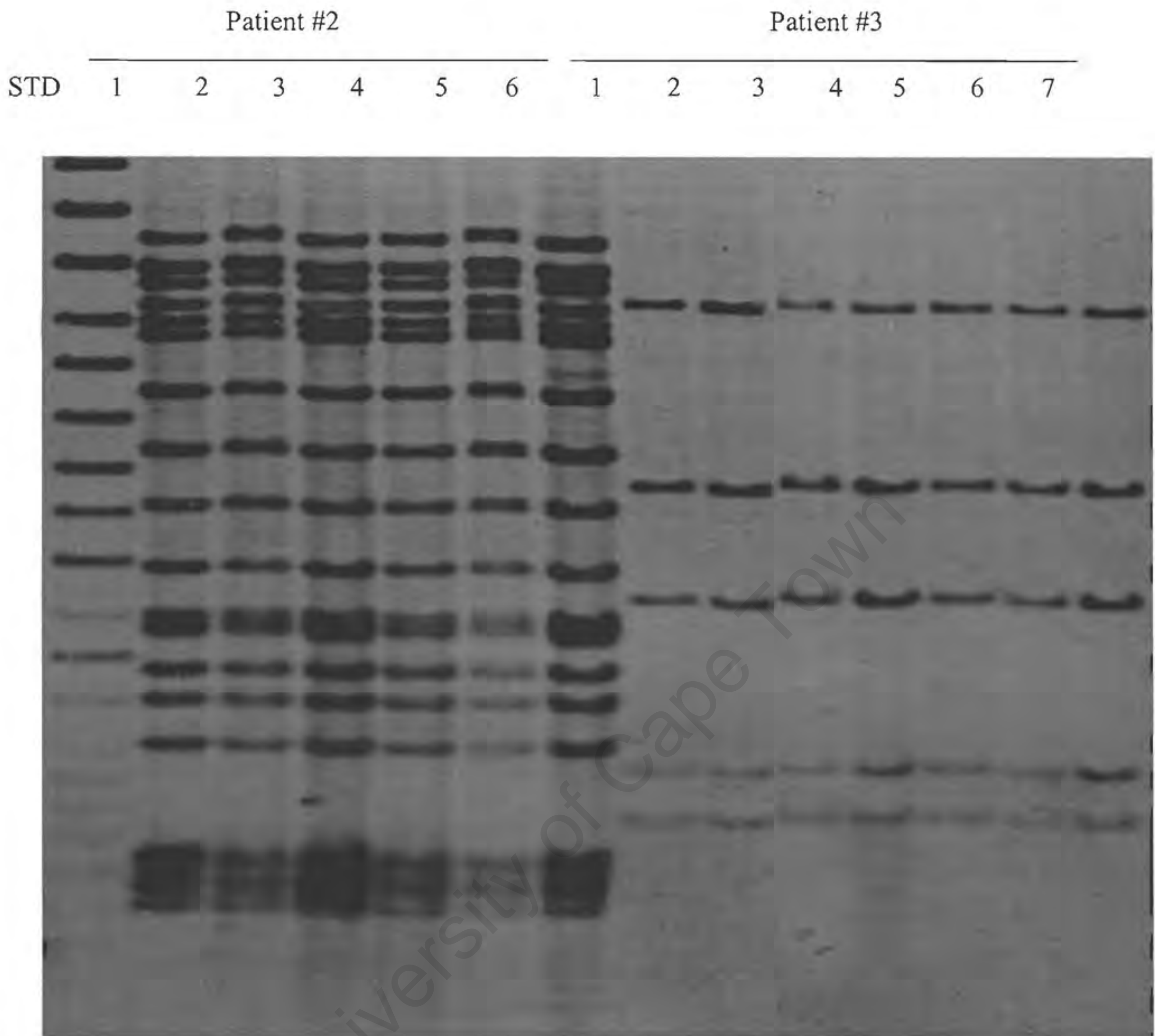
University of Cape Town

Patient #	Site	Histopathological examination		Bacteriology		Genotypic analysis of selected drug targets								mRNA expression			
		Lesion	Airway	AFB	Culture	*rpoB*	*katG*	*inhA*	*pncA*	*embB*	*rpsL*	*rrs*	*gyrA*	IL-2	IL-12	IFN-γ	iNOS
1	sputum	-	-	Numerous	*M.tuberculosis*	WT	WT	WT	WT	WT	WT	WT	WT	-	-	-	-
	LUL	Cavity wall (caseous necrosis)	Open	Numerous	*M.tuberculosis*	WT	WT	WT	WT	WT	**K43R**	WT	WT	120	190	5400	nd
	LLL	Cavity wall (caseous necrosis)	Open	Numerous	nd	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	100	220	6300	nd
	LLL	Granuloma (fibro-caseous)	Closed	Scanty	*M.tuberculosis*	WT	WT	WT	WT	WT	WT	WT	WT	85	415	5000	nd
	LN	Granuloma (non-necrotic)	Closed	None	nd	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	80	340	8700	nd
2	sputum	-	-	Numerous	*M.tuberculosis*	S531L	WT	C15T	WT	M306V	K88R	WT	WT	-	-	-	-
	RUL	Cavity wall (caseous necrosis)	Open	Moderate	*M.tuberculosis*	S531L	WT	C15T	WT	M306V	K88R	WT	**D89N**	107	244	3149	46
	RLL	Cavity wall (caseous necrosis)	Open	Numerous	*M.tuberculosis*	S531L	WT	C15T	WT	M306V	K88R	WT	**D94G**	89	345	1630	621
	RLL	Cavity wall (caseous necrosis)	Open	Scanty	*M.tuberculosis*	S531L	WT	C15T	WT	M306V	K88R	WT	**D89N**	28	136	1465	21
	RML	Small nodule (caseous)	Closed	Scanty	*M.tuberculosis*	S531L	WT	C15T	WT	M306V	K88R	WT	WT	32	240	1196	90
	RLL	Infarction (coagulative necrosis)	Closed	Scanty	*M.tuberculosis*	S531L	WT	C15T	WT	M306V	K88R	WT	WT	13	89	7243	135
3	sputum	-	-	Numerous	*M.tuberculosis*	S531L	S315T	WT	173 (T del)	M306V	K43R	WT	D94G	-	-	-	-
	LUL	Cavity wall (caseous necrosis)	Open	Moderate	*M.tuberculosis*	S531L	S315T	WT	173 (T del)	M306V	K43R	WT	D94G	80	199	7536	207
	LLL	Cavity wall (caseous necrosis)	Open	Scanty	*M.tuberculosis*	S531L	S315T	WT	173 (T del)	M306V	K43R	WT	D94G	92	290	715	119
	LLL	Fibrotic nodule (liquefaction)	Open	Moderate	*M.tuberculosis*	S531L	S315T	WT	173 (T del)	M306V	K43R	**G1484T**	D94G	80	388	1142	129
	LUL	Granuloma (caseous necrosis)	Closed	Moderate	*M.tuberculosis*	S531L	S315T	WT	173 (T del)	M306V	K43R	WT	D94G	175	421	1861	38
	LLL	Miliary nodules (caseous)	Closed	Scanty	*M.tuberculosis*	S531L	S315T	WT	173 (T del)	M306V	K43R	WT	D94G	64	78	202	181
	LLL	"Normal" lung tissue	-	Scanty	*M.tuberculosis*	S531L	**WT**	WT	173 (T del)	**WT**	K43R	WT	nd	64	138	605	274
4	LUL	Granuloma (non-necrotic)	Closed	None	Negative	-	-		-	-	-	-	-	101	197	857	96
	LUL	Granuloma (non-caseous)	Closed	Scanty	Negative	-	-		-	-	-	-	-	313	289	1201	103
	LLL	"Normal" lung tissue	-	None	Negative	-	-		-	-	-	-	-	78	107	362	373
5	LUL	Cavity wall (no necrosis)	Open	None	Negative	-	-		-	-	-	-	-	168	409	2407	102
	LLL	Granuloma (fibrotic)	Closed	None	Negative	-	-		-	-	-	-	-	76	325	2066	14
6	LUL	Cavity wall (no necrosis)	Open	None	Negative	-	-		-	-	-	-	-	87	234	1666	145
	LUL	Granuloma (caseous)	Closed	None	Negative	-	-		-	-	-	-	-	159	385	2541	115
	LLL	Miliary nodules (caseous)	Closed	Scanty	Negative	-	-		-	-	-	-	-	90	152	1321	270

LUL/RUL=Left/Right upper lobe; LN=lymphnode; nd = not done

Table 6-2 Results of the histopathological, microbiological and host mRNA analysis carried out on the different lung lesions.

University of Cape Town



University of Cape Town

Figure 6-2 IS*6110* Southern blot hybridization patterns of *M. tuberculosis* isolates recovered from multiple anatomical sites of the lungs of Patients #2 and #3. The six isolates from Patient #2 were recovered from (1) sputum, (2) right upper lobe open, (3) right lower lobe open, (4) right lower lobe open, (5) right middle lobe closed, and (6) right lower lobe closed lesions. The seven isolates from Patient #3 were recovered from (1) sputum, (2) left upper lobe open, (3) left lower lobe open, (4) left lower lobe open, (5) left upper lobe closed, (6) left lower lobe closed lesions, and (7) left lower lobe "normal" (see Table 6-2). STD refers to the molecular weight standard.

additional antibiotic resistance at secondary sites. Interestingly, in all three patients, the additionally acquired drug resistance mutations were seen in *M. tuberculosis* cultured from open lesions *i.e.* lesions connected to an airway (Table 6-2).

Cytokine and iNOS gene expression in the lesions of the resected lungs. The different lung samples obtained from all six patients were evaluated for expression of mRNA for IL-2, IL-12, IFN-γ, and iNOS. Cytokine and iNOS gene expression was observed in all lesions from patients with active TB as well as from those who had post tuberculous, culture negative lung disease (Table 6-2). No apparent correlation of the level of expression of the different genes and the type of lesion or the presence of AFB was observed. Rather, our results showed variable levels of immune activation in the tissue samples obtained from the different types of lesions of all subjects studied. This heterogeneity of cytokine expression suggests that the relatively large tissue fragments collected for study (about 0.5g each) contained a mixture of microenvironments rather than a single specific histologic microenvironment (see below). Our results also suggested that failure to control the growth of the bacilli was not associated with a global suppression of cellular immunity in the lungs of the three patients with chronic sputum positive disease.

Histopathologic analysis of lesions of the resected lungs. Examination of histopathology sections of the various lesions revealed that the luminal surface of the cavities in lungs from patients with sputum positive disease consisted of a superficial layer containing numerous mononuclear cells overlying a layer of caseous necrotic material. Subtending the necrotic layer there was granulomatous/fibrotic tissue with a mixed mononuclear cell infiltrate consisting of multi-nuclear (Langhans-type) giant cells, sheets of epithelioid macrophages and many scattered lymphocytes (Figure 6-3). In the closed (non-cavitary) necrotizing granulomas, the central area of caseous necrotic material was surrounded by fibrotic tissue and a multi-nuclear giant cells containing mononuclear cell infiltrate (Figure

University of Cape Town

6-4). The lung tissue surrounding these granulomas frequently contained an increased number of mononuclear cells.

In the open granulomas, large numbers of apparently cell-associated bacilli were detected at the surface of the cavity (Figure 6-5D). The area of necrotic material had few, if any, bacilli, and the granulomatous/fibrotic layer with abundant macrophages and giant cells was essentially devoid of bacilli (Figure 6-5F). In the closed granulomas, occasionally, small to moderate numbers of AFB were observed in macrophages infiltrating the necrotic area, usually in areas with breakdown (Figure 6-5H). Thus, in the three patients with sputum-positive disease, AFB were most numerous at the luminal surface of the cavities *i.e.* in granulomas with a patent connection to the airways.

In comparison, in the patients that were sputum negative the surface of the cavities appeared inactive with re-epithelization over fibrotic tissue (not shown). Multiple mononuclear cells including multi-nucleated giant cells, epithelioid macrophages and lymphocytes were seen in the granulomatous/fibrotic tissue despite the absence of any visible AFB and the failure to grow bacilli from this tissue. The extensive cellular immune response may explain the high levels of expression of iNOS and cytokine genes in these lesions, suggesting the persistence of antigen in the absence of intact visible and/or culturable bacilli (Table 6-2).

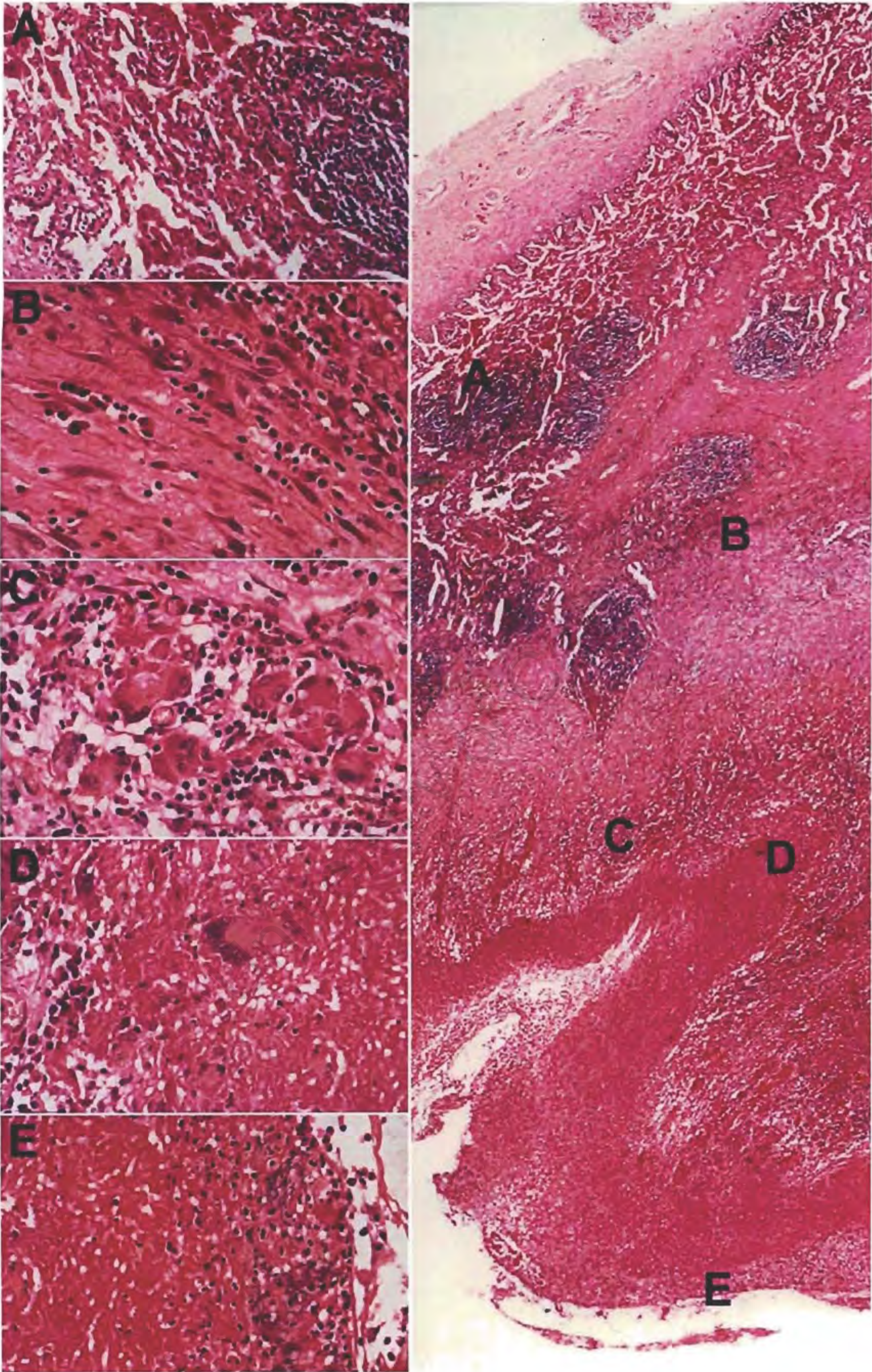
Immunohistologic localization of macrophages and T-lymphocytes. Immunohistologic examination of lung sections revealed that $CD68^+$ macrophages were most abundant in the granulomatous/fibrotic area immediately below the necrotic layer, and at the cavity surface (Figure 6-5). In addition, scattered $CD68^+$ macrophages were seen among the fibroblasts of fibrotic areas and large numbers of alveolar macrophages were seen within the airspaces (not shown). The macrophages within the granulomatous/fibrotic layer appeared free of visible bacilli, while the macrophages at the cavity surface appeared to be infected

University of Cape Town

Figure 6-3. Cross-section of an open granuloma (a TB lesion connected to an airway) of patient #1. The luminal surface of the cavity (*) consists of a superficial layer of mononuclear cells (E) which overlies a layer of caseous necrotic material (D,E). Subtending the necrotic layer there was granulomatous/fibrotic tissue with a mixed mononuclear cell infiltrate consisting of multi-nuclear giant cells (C), sheets of epithelioid macrophages (B) and many scattered lymphocytes (A).

(Original magnification: right hand panel x10; A-E x40)

University of Cape Town


A
B
C
D
E
A
B
C
D
E

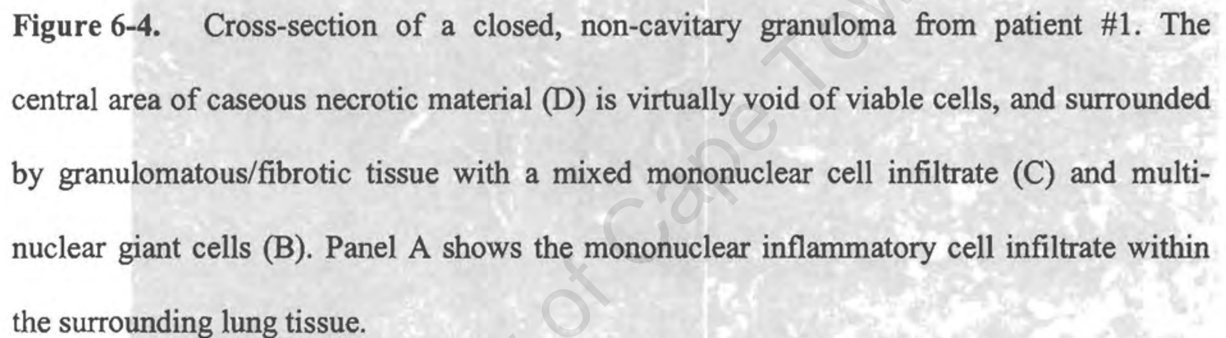


Figure 6-4. Cross-section of a closed, non-cavitary granuloma from patient #1. The central area of caseous necrotic material (D) is virtually void of viable cells, and surrounded by granulomatous/fibrotic tissue with a mixed mononuclear cell infiltrate (C) and multi-nuclear giant cells (B). Panel A shows the mononuclear inflammatory cell infiltrate within the surrounding lung tissue.

(Original magnification: right hand panel x10; A-D x40)

University of Cape Town

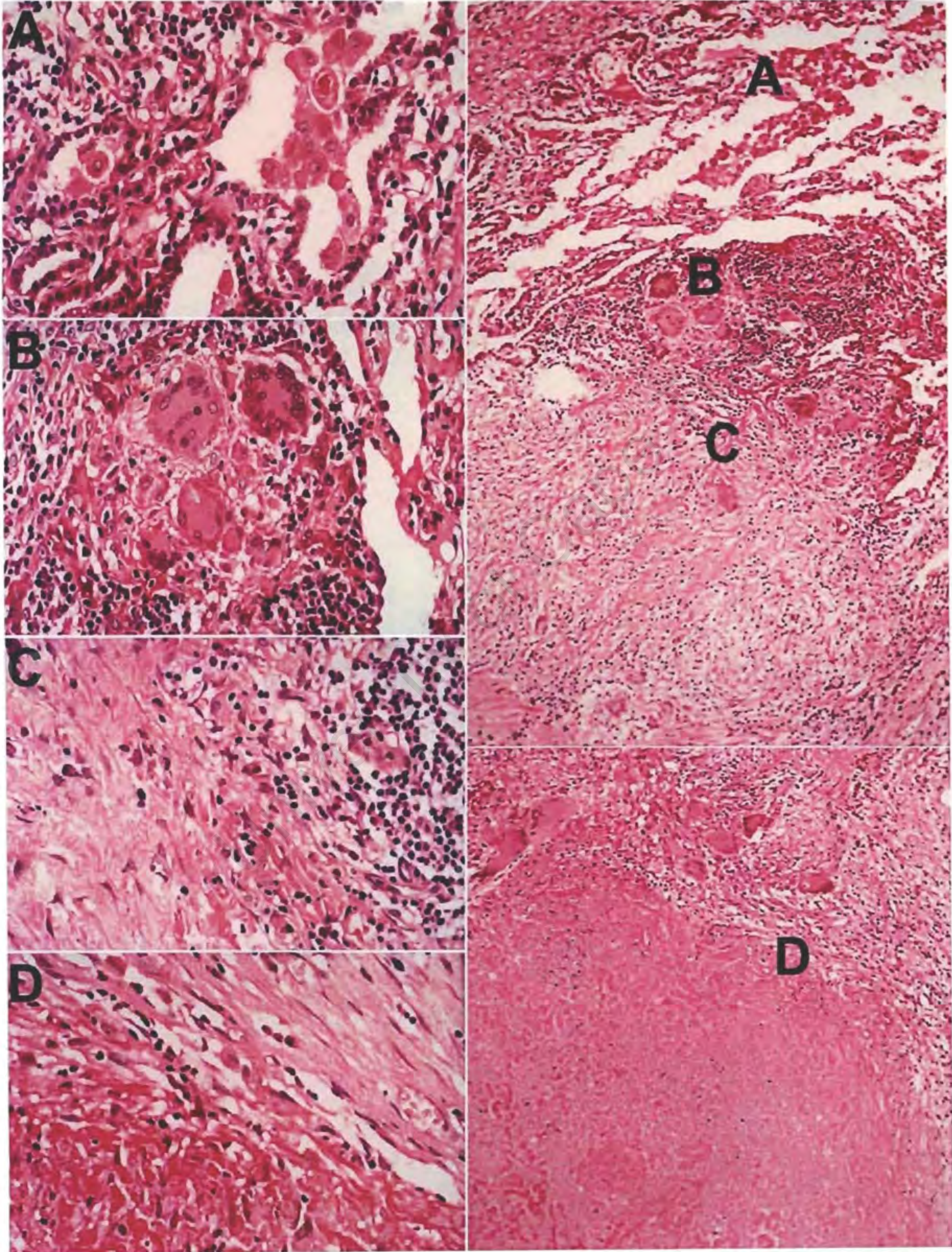
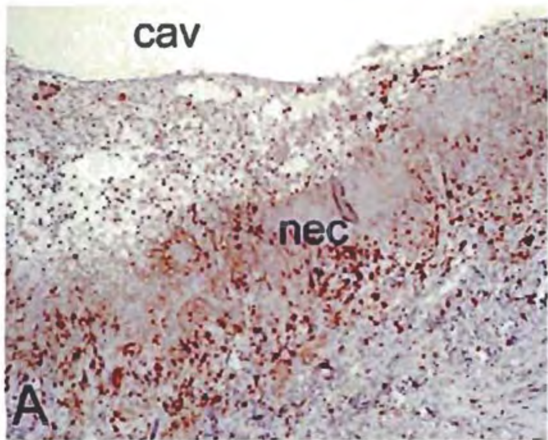
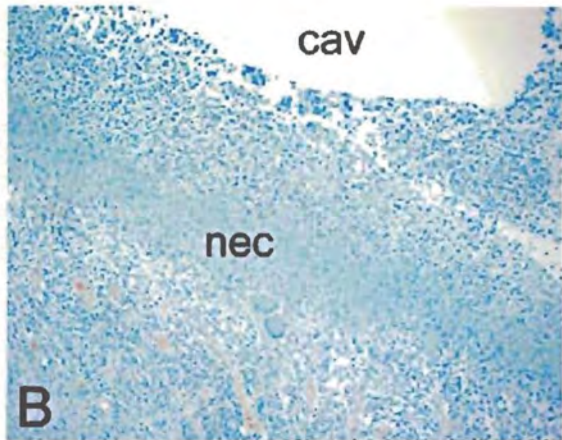

A
B
C
D
A
B
C
D

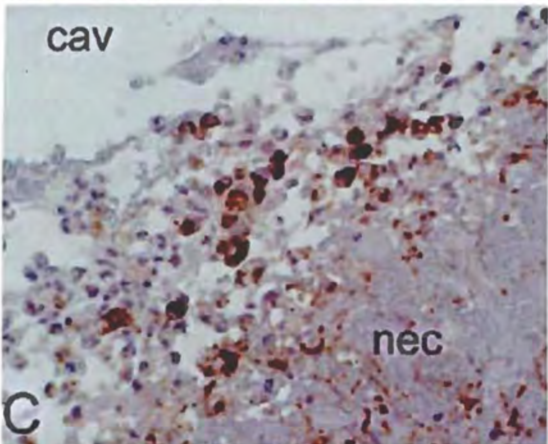
Figure 6-5 The localization of macrophages and AFB in the resected lung lesions. Macrophages, stained with CD68 (A, C, E) and AFB stained with carbolfuchsin (B, D, F) in the LUL cavity wall of the open lesion of patient #1 are shown. Staining for macrophages is observed at the cavity (cav) surface (A and C), within the necrotic area (nec) (A and C), and in the granulomatous area below the necrotic area (E). AFB are seen predominantly within macrophages at the cavity surface (D) and not in the Langhans cells or macrophages of the granulomtous tissue (F). The insert in D shows AFB in cells at the luminal surface of the RLL cavity of patient #2. Few AFB are also seen in macrophages within the liquefied (liq) caseous necrotic (nec) center of the LLL fibrotic nodule of patient #3 (H).

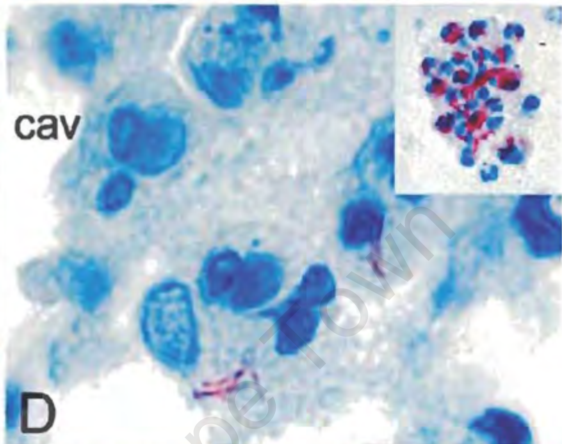
(Original magnification: x10 in A and B; x40 in C, E, F and G; x200 in D and H)

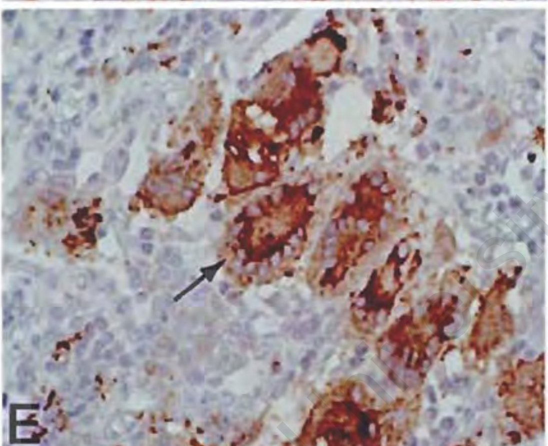
University of Cape Town

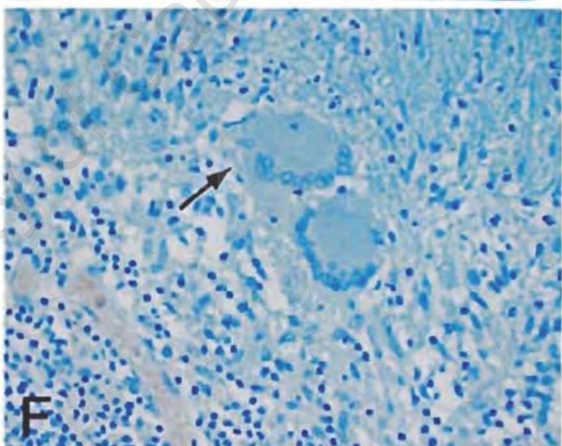

cav
nec
A

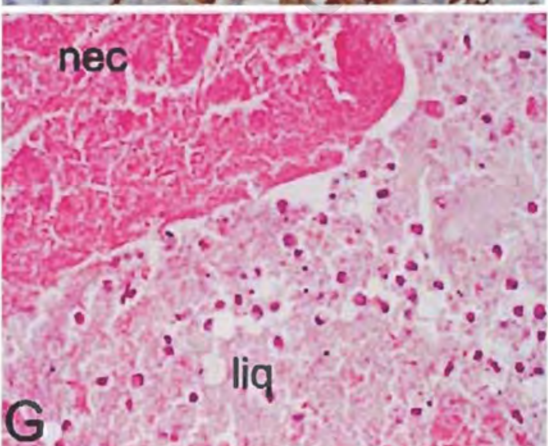

cav
nec
B

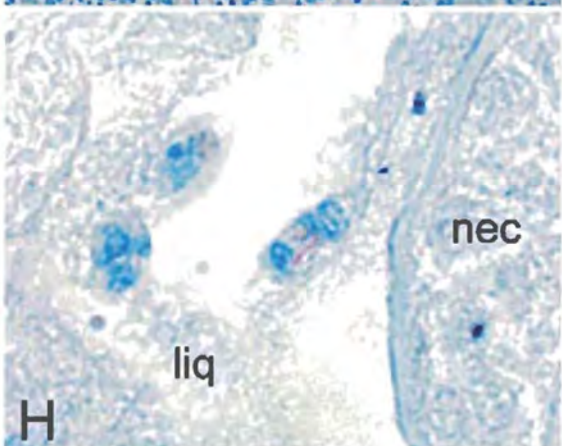

cav
nec
C


cav
D


E


F


nec
liq
G


nec
liq
H

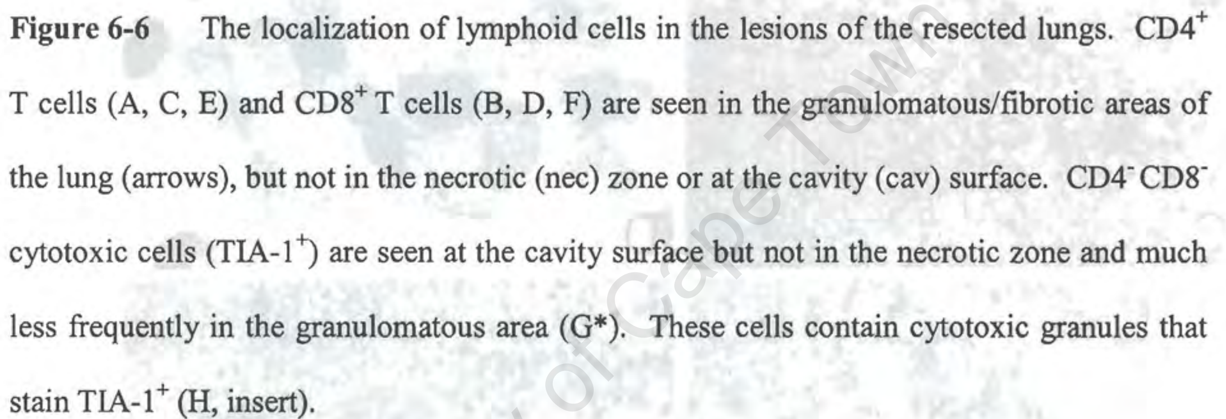
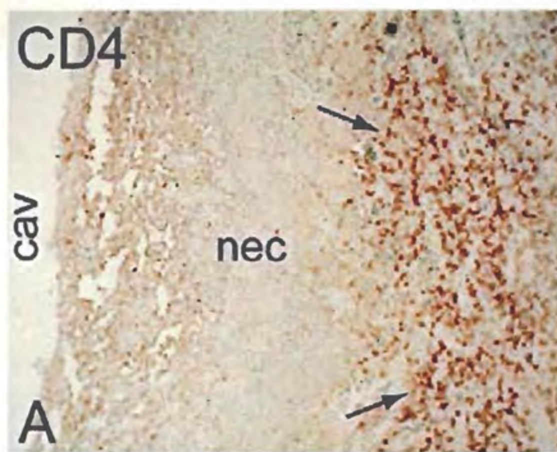
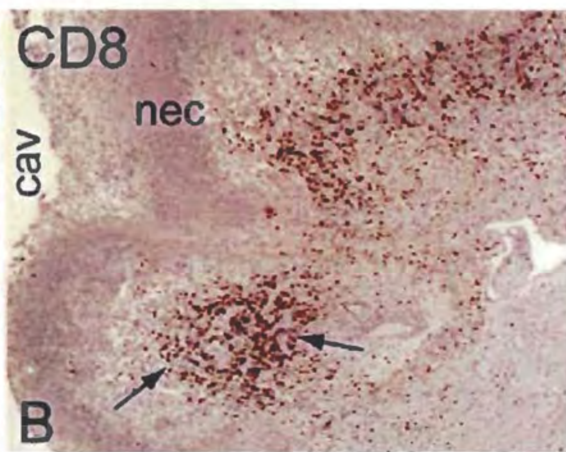
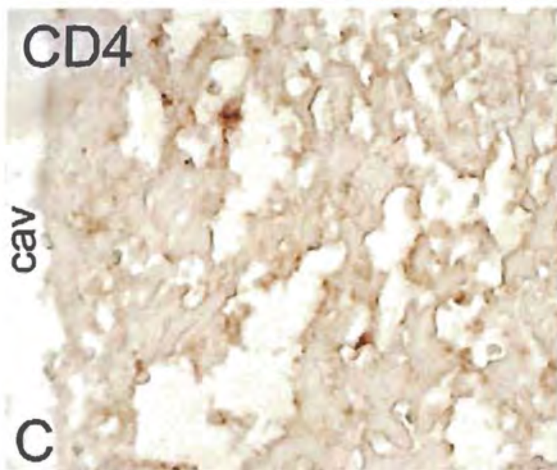
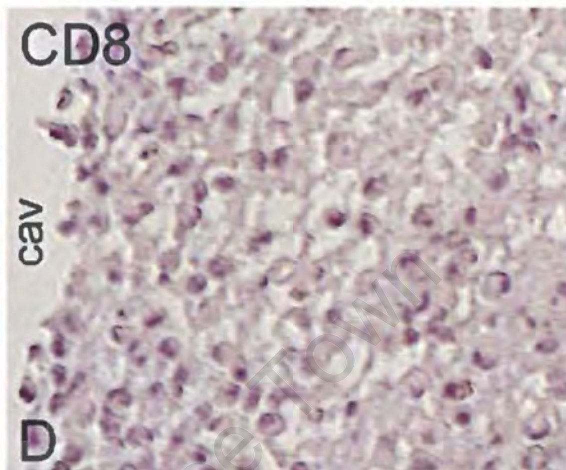
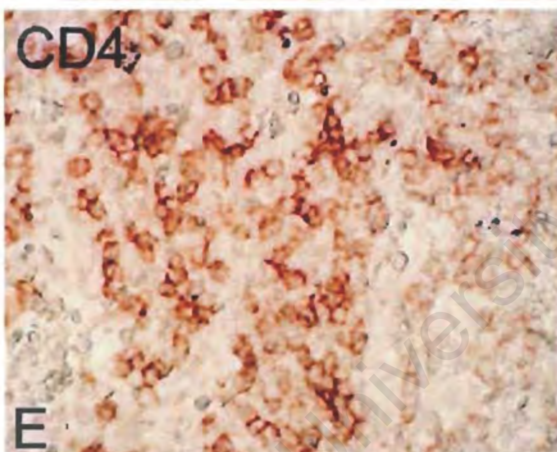
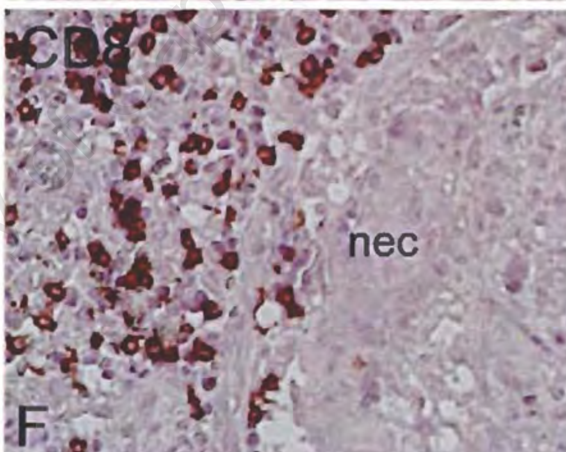
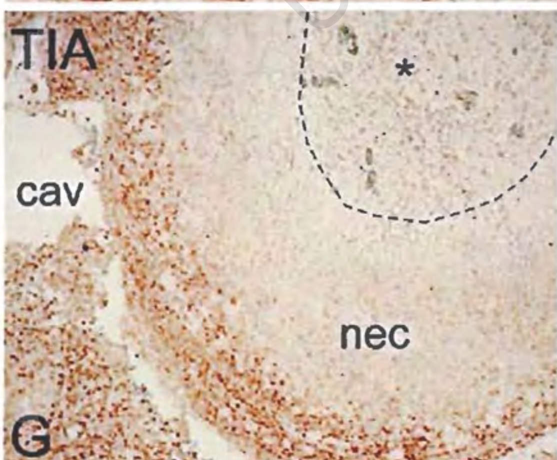
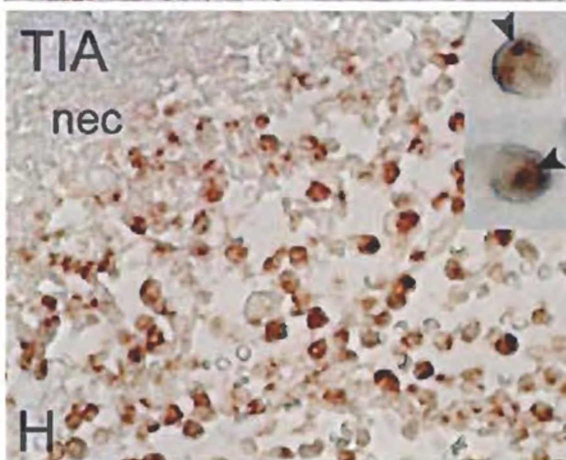


Figure 6-6 The localization of lymphoid cells in the lesions of the resected lungs. $CD4^+$ T cells (A, C, E) and $CD8^+$ T cells (B, D, F) are seen in the granulomatous/fibrotic areas of the lung (arrows), but not in the necrotic (nec) zone or at the cavity (cav) surface. $CD4^-CD8^-$ cytotoxic cells ($TIA\text{-}1^+$) are seen at the cavity surface but not in the necrotic zone and much less frequently in the granulomatous area (G*). These cells contain cytotoxic granules that stain $TIA\text{-}1^+$ (H, insert).

(Original magnificaiton: x4 in A, B and G; x40 in C, D, E, F and H; x100 in H, insert)

University of Cape Town


CD4
cav
nec
A

CD8
nec
cav
B

CD4
cav
C

CD8
cav
D

CD4
E

CD8
nec
F

TIA
*
cav
nec
G

TIA
nec
H

with multiple bacilli (Figure 6-5). Staining for the presence of $CD3^+ CD4^+$ and $CD3^+CD8^+$ T-lymphocytes revealed an abundance of these cells within the granulomatous/fibrotic layer and in lymphoid aggregates (Figure 6-6). Scattered T-lymphocytes were seen within the fibrotic areas and in the airspaces (not shown). In contrast, a striking absence of $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells was noted at the luminal surface of the cavity. This area, however, contained large numbers of $CD4^-$ $CD8^-$ mononuclear cells with lymphoid morphology that stained for the presence of cytotoxic granules (TIA^+ cells) (Figure 6-6). Taken together, these results suggest that the luminal surface of the cavity represents a microenvironment within the lung in which macrophages and T-cells are not co-localized, thereby preventing direct T-cell-macrophage interactions at those sites. In contrast, only mm away, at the other side of the necrotic zone, another microenvironment exists in which the two cell types are co-localized and free to interact directly, resulting in an efficient immune response capable of inhibiting mycobacterial replication.

Mycobacterial gene expression in the human lung. To gain insight in the adaptive responses of *M. tuberculosis* to the effects of the host immune response, we studied mycobacterial gene expression in bacilli from the open (cavitary) lung lesions of the 3 patients with active TB. Levels of bacillary mRNA expression in the human lung were compared to the level of gene expression by mycobacteria in the lungs of immune competent mice and IFN-γ deficient mice. Studies in mice of MTB gene expression had revealed that four genes (*mbtB*, *pckA*, *icl* and *hspX*) were strongly induced following bacterial growth restriction by the adaptive immune response. These genes encode enzymes involved in iron scavenging, gluconeogenesis, fatty acid metabolism and counteracting the effects of nitric oxide and hypoxia respectively. When MTB gene expression in human and mouse lungs was compared, marked differences were noted. Whereas the host immune response in mice was associated with marked upregulation of *mbtB*, *pckA*, and *icl* expression, minimal induction of

University of Cape Town

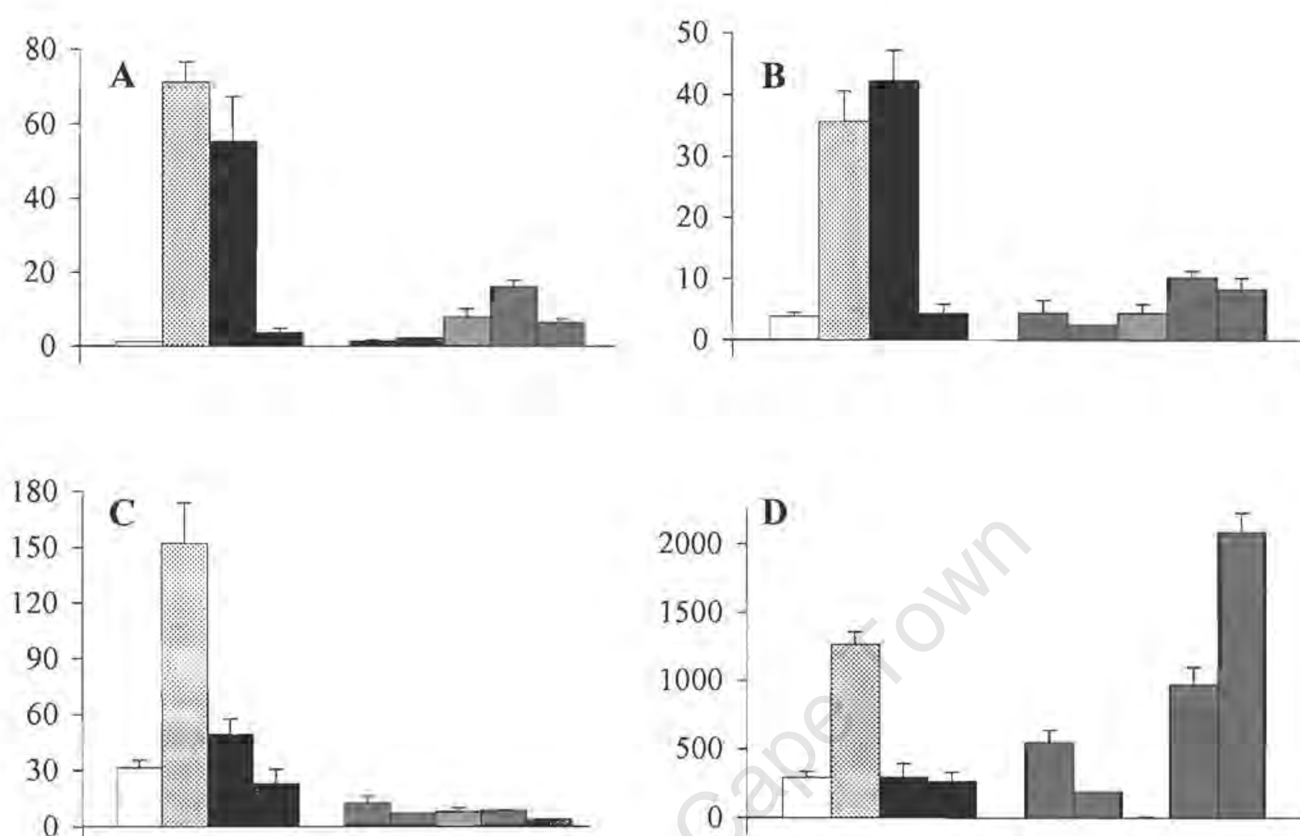


Figure 6-7 Induction of *M. tuberculosis* stress-response mRNAs in mouse and human lungs. Mice were infected by aerosol with ~1000 CFU of H37Rv, and lung samples were obtained from C57Bl/6 mice at 2 w (lane 1), 4 w (lane 2) and 9 w (lane 3), and from IFN-γ deficient mice (lane 4) at 4 w post-infection. Human lung biopsies (lanes 5-9) were obtained from the cavities of 3 HIV-negative patients with chronic, active TB: patient 1 (lanes 5,6), patient 2 (lane 7), patient 3 (lanes 8,9). Target mRNAs were *mbtB* (A), *pckA* (B), *icl* (C) and *hspX* (D), which are markers of the bacterial responses to iron limitation (A), glucose starvation (B), fatty acid catabolism (C), and nitric oxide exposure (D). Target mRNAs were quantified by real-time RT-PCR, internally calibrated to *sigA* mRNA, and are expressed as induction ratios (IR). Values represent averages for at least four independent RT-PCR reactions; error bars indicate standard deviations.

University of Cape Town

these genes by MTB obtained from the human cavities was observed (Figure 6-7A, 6-7B and 6-7C). These results suggest that, in contrast to the granulomas in the lungs of immune competent mice, the availability of iron and carbon sources at the surface of the human cavity may be less restricted. The mRNA expression profile for *mbtB*, *pckA*, and *icl* in the bacilli located at the human cavity was remarkably similar to the gene expression profile of MTB in the lungs of IFN-γ deficient mice (Figure 6-7). However, in contrast to the blunted expression of *mbtB*, *pckA*, and *icl* in human lung tissue, potent induction of *hspX* expression, the gene encoding the chaperonin alpha-crystallin, was noted (Figure 6-7D).

6.4 DISCUSSION

In this chapter, we present data supporting the idea that in the lungs of patients affected by TB, a single founder strain of *M. tuberculosis* may undergo mutagenesis during treatment leading to the acquisition of drug resistance independently in discrete physical locales, resulting in heterogeneous subpopulations of drug resistant bacilli. We also show that the lung of a chronic TB patient contains a diversity of micro anatomical niches created by the different immunologic processes occurring at these sites. Such anatomical/immunologic variability appears to be associated with discrete subpopulations of bacilli. We observe that clonal expansion of isolates harboring new drug resistance mutations is preferentially localized to the microenvironment where bacillary growth appears to be most active, the luminal surface of the cavities. At these sites, the macrophages appear to remain non-activated, and thus permissive for bacillary growth.

Lack of macrophage activation to a bacteriostatic state may be due to the selective exclusion of $CD3^+$ $CD4^+$ and $CD3^+$ $CD8^+$ T-cells from the lumen of the cavity (Figure 6-6). The underlying mechanism for the exclusion of $CD3^+$ T-cells from the cavity surface is unknown. Interestingly, this exclusion appears to be selective as there is a relative

University of Cape Town

enrichment at this site for $CD68^+$ macrophages as well as a population of as yet undefined $TIA\text{-}1^+$ cytotoxic lymphoid cells. TIA-1 is a monoclonal antibody that recognizes the 17kD granule membrane protein (GMP-17) expressed predominantly in the granules of $CD8^+$ $\alpha\beta$ T cell receptor (TCR), natural killer (NK) cells, as well as $\gamma\delta$ TCR^+ cells and some $CD4^+$ $\alpha\beta$ TCR^+ cells (Anderson, Nagler-Anderson, O'Brien, *et al.*, 1990; Matutes, Coelho, Aguado, *et al.*, 1996; Medley, Kedersha, O'Brien, *et al.*, 1996). Although the role of GMP-17 remains obscure, the protein is known to translocate to the cytotoxic T-cell surface after fusion of the granules with the cell membrane, and to have sequence homology with calcium channel proteins (Medley, Kedersha, O'Brien, *et al.*, 1996). $TIA\text{-}1^+$ cells have been shown to kill target cells by two distinct mechanisms, Fas receptor-mediated apoptosis and granule exocytosis (Kagi, Vignaux, Ledermann, *et al.*, 1994; Meehan, McCluskey, Pascual, *et al.*, 1997; Nagata and Golstein, 1995). However, in the present study there is no direct evidence of any cytotoxic activity of these cells nor do the cells appear to activate the adjacent macrophages to a bacteriostatic/bactericidal phenotype. In contrast, where macrophages and T-cells are co-localized and potentially in close contact with each other, as observed in the granulomatous/fibrotic areas, the macrophages are morphologically activated (multinucleated giant cells or epithelioid) and few if any bacilli are seen. The phenotypic identification of the $TIA\text{-}1^+$ leukocytes seen at the surface of the cavities in patients with active TB must await the immunohistologic probing of unfixed frozen tissue that can only be performed in the BSL-3 facility.

The growth of *M. tuberculosis* is well known to occur in proportion to oxygen tension (Wayne, 1977). Thus, another factor contributing to the florid bacterial growth seen at the luminal cavity surface could be improved access to oxygen in this microenvironment. In the open granulomas, the extent of bacterial growth appeared to follow an intuitive pattern with respect to oxygen concentration, with necrotic and deeper fibrotic regions, anticipated to be

University of Cape Town

largely anoxic, appearing almost sterile. Nonetheless, the gene encoding alpha-crystallin, a protein thought to protect MTB against the effects of hypoxic stress (Yuan, Crane and Barry, 1996) as well as the actions of NO (Garbe, Hibler and Deretic, 1999), was strongly upregulated in the bacilli at the surface of the cavity where oxygen is most abundant. The extent to which oxygen concentration and immune pressure combine to suppress bacterial growth remains to be determined.

Our mycobacterial gene expression studies suggested a relative abundance of iron at the surface of the human cavity. Iron is an essential nutrient for most pathogens, including MTB, and iron limitation at the sites of infection is an important mechanism of host defense (De Voss, Rutter, Schroeder, *et al.*, 1999; De Voss, Rutter, Schroeder, *et al.*, 2000; Manabe, Saviola, Sun, *et al.*, 1999; Rodriguez, Gold, Gomez, *et al.*, 1999). In accordance, induction of *mbtB* as well as repression of *bfrA* (which encodes an iron-storing bacterioferritin) in the mouse lung was temporarily associated with the onset of the adaptive immune response. Persistence of MTB in the mouse lung in the face of the cell-mediated immune response requires isocitrate lyase (ICL), an enzyme involved in lipid metabolism (McKinney, Honer zu Bentrup, Munoz-Elias, *et al.*, 2000). In keeping with the essential role of ICL *in vivo*, strong induction of *icl* expression was observed in MTB obtained from the lungs of immune competent mice. In contrast, the quantitative expression of *icl* by MTB in human tissue resembled *icl* expression in immune deficient mice. The very low IR values for *icl* and *pckA* suggest that availability of carbon sources may be less restricted in patients with chronic, active TB than in the lungs of chronically infected mice. It is possible that relatively unrestricted access to iron and carbon sources in the human lung may have contributed to the ability of MTB to grow and survive at the surface of the cavity.

The presence of discrete populations of bacteria in patients presumed to have acquired drug resistance during therapy has not been carefully studied previously. Our results

University of Cape Town

suggest that relying on drug-susceptibility tests of organisms isolated from patient sputum may not provide an accurate representation of the bacterial susceptibility in all sub-populations within the lung. Because quantitation of the bacterial subpopulations and their absolute resistance levels was not performed in this study, it is not possible to make specific therapeutic recommendations. However, our observations suggest the possibility that a careful analysis of resistance levels and bacillary population size might lead to a recommendation in some cases to continue therapy with a first line or even a second line drug in the face of resistance to a given drug in the sputum isolate.

These studies provide a preliminary analysis of the immunologic and bacterial dynamics in tissues from human TB patients. Continued study of lung tissues from patients with active TB will provide important benchmarks for validation of animal models of disease and may suggest alternative therapeutic strategies for the treatment of chronic and MDR-TB.

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

Chapter 7

Genetic polymorphism in *M. tuberculosis* isolates from patients with chronic multi-drug resistant tuberculosis

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

7.1 ABSTRACT

Multi-drug resistant tuberculosis (MDR-TB) is a major public health problem because treatment is complicated, cure rates are well below those of drug susceptible TB, and patients may remain infectious for months or years despite best available therapy. To gain a better understanding of MDR-TB, we characterized serial isolates from 13 HIV-negative MDR-TB patients by IS*6110* fingerprint, spoligotype, and sequence of *rpoB*, *katG*, *inhA*, *pncA*, *embB*, *rpsL*, *rrs* and *gyrA*. In all 13 patients, chronic MDR-TB was caused by a single *M. tuberculosis* (MTB) strain, 8 (62%) of which belonged to the W-Beijing family. In 4/13 (31%) patients, the patient isolate acquired additional drug resistance mutations during the study. In these 4 patients, heterogeneous populations of bacilli with different resistance mutations as well as mixtures of drug susceptible and drug resistant phenotypes were observed. This genetic heterogeneity requires treatment targeted at both resistant and susceptible phenotypes, i.e. new drugs to control the growth of resistant bacilli should be added to the drugs that are active against the residual susceptible bacilli.

University of Cape Town

7.2 INTRODUCTION

Multi-drug resistant tuberculosis, caused by MTB isolates resistant to at least rifampin (RIF) and isoniazid (INH), is a serious public health hazard. High rates of MDR-TB are considered a reflection of poor case management and an ineffective TB control program (Espinal, Laszlo, Simonsen, *et al.*, 2001; Iseman, 2000). For example, in Estonia a country where the TB control infrastructure has recently deteriorated, MDR-TB accounts for 14% of new TB cases and up to 48% of TB in previously treated patients (Espinal, Laszlo, Simonsen, *et al.*, 2001). Treatment of MDR-TB can be very difficult because loss of the two most potent antituberculous drugs (i.e. INH and RIF) leaves only less effective "first line" therapy and "second line" drugs that are more toxic and less efficacious (Iseman, 1993). Thus, while

some patients with MDR-TB can be cured by short-course chemotherapy (1999; Espinal, Kim, Suarez, *et al.*, 2000; Mitchison and Nunn, 1986), in others bacillary growth is merely suppressed as long as treatment is continued (Goble, Iseman, Madsen, *et al.*, 1993). Furthermore, between 8 and 35% of patients have persistently active disease refractory to multi-drug therapy (Goble, Iseman, Madsen, *et al.*, 1993; Saenghirunvattana, Charoenpan, Vathesatogkit, *et al.*, 1996; Schaaf, Botha, Beyers, *et al.*, 1996; Suarez, Floyd, Portocarrero, *et al.*, 2002; Tahaoglu, Torun, Sevim, *et al.*, 2001). Consequently, in most studies, the cure rates of MDR-TB remain well below those for drug susceptible TB, and mortality, even among HIV-negative patients, may be substantial (Goble, Iseman, Madsen, *et al.*, 1993). In addition, MDR-TB patients that do not respond to treatment are a constant source of transmission of MDR-MTB (Bifani, Plikaytis, Kapur, *et al.*, 1996; Frieden, Sherman, Maw, *et al.*, 1996; Ridzon, Kent, Valway, *et al.*, 1997; Schaaf, Van Rie, Gie, *et al.*, 2000; Van Rie, Warren, Richardson, *et al.*, 2000; van Rie, Warren, Beyers, *et al.*, 1999).

Drug resistance in MTB results from mutations (nucleotide substitutions, insertions or deletions) in the genetic targets of the drugs used for antituberculous chemotherapy (Ramaswamy and Musser, 1998). Resistance conferring mutations in MTB occur spontaneously at a very low frequency and are not transmitted between bacilli. Drug selection for resistance is associated with inadequate therapy or sub-therapeutic drug levels, and leads to the resistant phenotype becoming clinically significant and ultimately predominating in persons in whom the disease was originally caused by drug susceptible isolates (Iseman, 1993). In patients with MDR-TB, additional mutations may be selected for by adding a single drug to a failing regime (Farmer, Bayona, Becerra, *et al.*, 1998). Since most drug resistance mutations appear not to affect the fitness of MTB (Cohen, Sommers and Murray, 2003), once acquired, these mutations persist even after selective drug pressure has been withdrawn (Iseman, 2000).

University of Cape Town

In the human lung, acquisition of drug resistance mutations by MTB occurs predominantly within cavities where high bacterial loads, active mycobacterial replication, and reduced exposure to host defense mechanisms have been reported (Canetti, 1965; Vandiviere, Loring, Melvin, *et al.*, 1956). Since MTB in sputum samples of TB patients originate from lung cavities, genetic analysis of serial sputum isolates allowed us to study the genetic evolution of drug resistance in situ.

7.3 RESULTS

Patients. We studied the MTB isolates from 13 HIV-negative MDR-TB patients (8 males, 5 females; mean age 35.8 years, range 22-60) who were refractory to at least 12 months of chemotherapy (Table 7-1). These patients comprised the entire South African subset of a multinational, randomized, placebo controlled study to evaluate the role of aerosolized recombinant human interferon-gamma (rhuIFN-γ, InterMune, Brisbane, CA, USA) as an adjunct to chemotherapy in patients with MDR-TB (Condos, Rom and Schluger, 1997). All subjects were residents of the Western Cape region of South Africa, where TB is endemic (incidence rate 372/100,000) (Medical Officer of Health, 1994/1995). Five patients had had prior TB; none of the patients had extra-pulmonary TB; two patients had diabetes mellitus (patients #5 and #9) and no other patients had specific risk factors for tuberculosis. None of the patients were related or had known epidemiologic links, and none were geographically clustered. At entry into the study, all patients had sputum smear-positive, MDR-TB and had received therapy for a mean of 36 (12-77) months at entry. Most patients excreted large numbers of bacilli in sputum (median score 2.0, Table 7-1), and most patients had extensive disease on chest radiograph (median score 11.0).

Due to a low prevalence of MDR in this area (1.1% in new and 4% in previously treated patients respectively) (Weyer, Groenewald, Zwarenstein, *et al.*, 1995), at diagnosis all

University of Cape Town

patients received treatment for drug susceptible TB (2 months of INH, RIF, PZA, and EMB followed by INH and RIF or INH, RIF and PZA for an extra 4 months). Once MDR-TB was diagnosed, drug regimens were individualized on the basis of the results of phenotypic drug susceptibility tests (Table 7-2). Drug susceptibility was evaluated every 2-3 months, and treatment regimens adjusted accordingly at approximately 6 monthly intervals in unresponsive patients. Upon entry into the study, therapy was again adjusted according to phenotypic drug susceptibility, treatment history and side effect profile. Eight of 13 patients received aerosolized rhuIFN-γ as an adjunct to treatment (Table 7-2).

All 13 patients remained sputum positive for MTB throughout the study. Eight patients died during the 56 weeks of the study, most likely as a result of cachexia and/or chronic respiratory failure. Patients who died had more extensive disease (median score 14.5) compared to those who survived (median score 9.0) ($p=0.012$) despite similar disease duration (41.7 vs 47.2 months, $p=0.64$) (Table 7-1). A mean of 7.6 (range 2-16) cultures per patient were available for analysis.

Phenotypic and genotypic resistance profile of *M. tuberculosis*. The phenotypic and genetic drug resistance for each patient is shown in Table 7-3. All isolates displayed phenotypic resistance to INH. Eight had single nucleotide substitutions in *katG*, and 4 had mutations in *inhA* C15T. In one INH resistant strain, neither *katG* nor *inhA* mutations were identified despite the presence of high level (>10 μg/ml) phenotypic isoniazid resistance. Eleven patients were continued on INH despite documented resistance to this drug. Eight of these received thiacetazone, which was only available as an INH-containing combination. Phenotypic and genotypic (*rpoB*) resistance testing confirmed that all isolates were resistant to RIF. Phenotypic resistance to EMB was not observed in any of the 13 isolates. However, sequence analysis of *embB*, the genetic target of EMB, revealed resistance mutations in 62% of isolates. The isolates of 69% of patients harbored *pncA* mutations. The presence of

University of Cape Town

Patient #	Age (y)	Gender	Prior TB	Duration of Treatment (m)	MDR strain Spoligotype	Sputum AFB load *	Chest Radiograph Severity Score *	Number of Cultures **	Study Outcome Status **
1	60	F	Y	30	34 (W321)	2.5	11.0	16	alive
2	27	M	N	51	157	2.0	9.0	5	deceased
3	29	F	N	28	34 (MH)	1.5	17.0	2	deceased
4	32	M	Y	26	34 (W616)	3.0	13.5	4	deceased
5	47	F	N	17	2	1.0	2.0	13	alive
6	39	M	N	61	857	1.0	3.0	10	alive
7	36	M	Y	69	2	1.5	14.5	11	deceased
8	33	M	N	21	34 (W616)	3.0	15.5	6	deceased
9	32	M	N	83	34 (W451)	2.0	8.0	4	alive
10	25	F	Y	43	34 (W451)	1.5	10.0	2	alive
11	44	F	N	41	79	1.0	13.0	8	deceased
12	40	M	N	49	34 (W616)	2.5	11.0	7	alive
13	22	M	Y	56	34 (W616)	2.5	15.0	11	deceased

* See methods for quantification of sputum smears and disease severity score; ** during the study

Table 7-1 Characteristics of the patients with MDR TB .

University of Cape Town

Patient #	Initial TB Treatment: Drugs	(m)*	Treatment since Diagnosis of MDR-TB: Drugs	(m)*	Treatment During Study: Drugs	(w)*
1**	R H Z E	12	R H Z E Et Th Sm K	18	E O Cf	56
2	R H Z E	3	H Z E Et Th Sm K O Cf Te	48	E Et O Cf	12
3**	R H Z E	4	H Z E Et Th A K O Cf Cy Cla	24	H Th A O Cf Cla	3
4**	R H Z E	8	H Z Th K O	18	H Z Et Th O	14
5	R H Z E	5	H Z E Et Th Sm O	12	H Z E Et Th O	53
6**	R H Z E	5	H Z E Et Th Sm K O Cf Te	56	H Z E Et Th O Cf Te	52
7**	R H Z E	16	H Z E Et Th Sm K O Cy	53	H Z E Sm O	56
8	R H Z E	3	H Z E Et Th Sm K O Cf	18	H Z E Th O	30
9**	R H Z E	6	R H Z E Et Th Sm K O Cf	77	H Z E Et Sm	28
10**	R H Z E	13	H Z E Et Th Sm O	30	H Z E Th O	8
11	R H Z E	7	R H Z E Et Th Sm K O Cf Cla	34	H Z E Et Th O	17
12**	R H Z E	7	H Z E K O	42	H Z E O	23
13	R H Z E	13	H Z E Et Th Sm K O Cf	43	H Z E Et Th O	22

R=RIF; H=INH; Z=PZA; E=EMB; Et=ethionamide; Th=thiacetazone; Sm=streptomycin; K=kanamycin; A=amikacin; O=ofloxacin; Cf=clofazamine; Cy=cycloserine; Cla=clarithromycin; Te=terizidone

* duration of treatment in months (m) or weeks (w) ** patients who received aerosolized rhuIFN-g

Table 7-2 TB treatment prior to and during the study.

University of Cape Town

aminoglycoside resistance mutations in *rrs* was poorly predicted by the results of phenotypic susceptibility tests. Taken together, these results suggest that the isolates from all 13 patients were highly resistant to the most potent first and second line agents.

Genetic analysis of serial sputum isolates. Despite living in an area with high rates of MTB transmission, no evidence of co-infection with a second MTB strain was observed in any of the patients. This was shown by the fact that all MTB isolates recovered from the same patient showed genetic stability as IS*6110* fingerprint profiles and spoligotype patterns did not vary over time (Figure 7-1). It is interesting to note that 8/13 (62%) isolates from the patients with treatment refractory MDR-TB belonged to the W-Beijing family (n=7) or the W-Beijing lineage (n=1) (Bifani, Mathema, Kurepina, *et al.*, 2002). Two of the W-Beijing strains were found in clusters: W451 was cultured from patients #9 and #10 and W616 was identified in patients #4,#8,#12 and #13 (Table 7-1). No clustering of strains was observed among the 5 isolates that were not W-Beijing isolates. Patients infected with W-Beijing isolates had higher sputum bacterial loads (median bacillary load 2.5) than patients with non W-Beijing isolates (median bacillary load 1.0) (p=0.019).

Sequence analysis in serial *M. tuberculosis* sputum isolates. MTB drug resistance polymorphism was explored by sequencing the genes of serial isolates (2-3 per patient). In 9 patients, all drug targets examined remained unchanged from baseline over the 3-56 week study period (Table 7-3). However, in 4 patients (31%), additional drug resistance mutations had been acquired during treatment. In patient #1, polymorphisms were noted in *katG*, *embB* and *gyrA*. The *gyrA* gene mutation was found in some but not all bacilli at multiple time points. Patient #2 had *pncA*, *gyrA* and *rrs* polymorphisms; the *pncA* gene was mutated in some but not all the bacilli at 2 time points. Patient #6 had polymorphisms in *gyrA*, *pncA*, *rpoB* and *katG* and the *gyrA* gene was mutated in some but not all the bacilli at 1 time point. In patient #10, both *gyrA* and *pncA* had polymorphisms and the *pncA* gene was mutated in

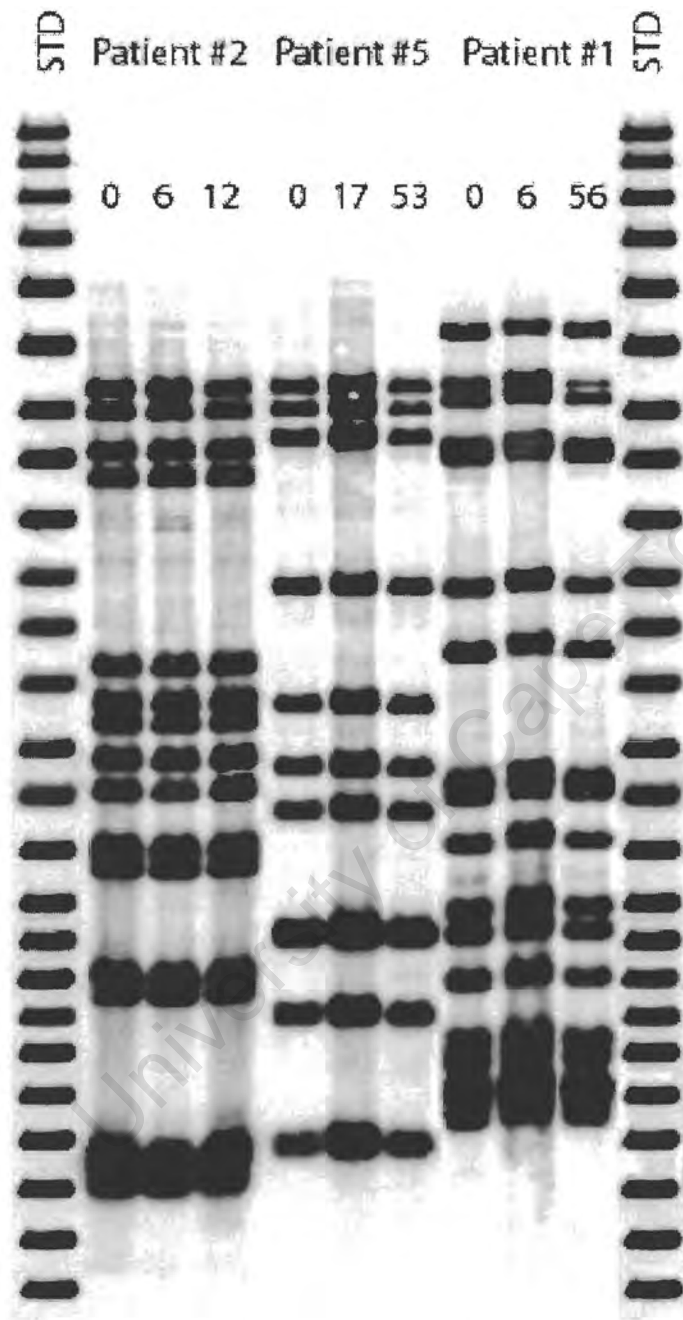
University of Cape Town

Patient #	RIF	*rpoB*	INH	*katG*	*inhA*	PZA	*pncA*	EMB	*embB*	Sm	*rpsL, rrs*	K	*rrs*	O	*gyrA*
1	R	D516V	**R**	**WT***	**WT**	nd	96 (CAA ins)	S	WT	S	WT	**S**	**A1401G**	S	WT
2	R	S531L	R	S315T	WT	nd	WT	**S**	**M306I**	**S**	**C492T,G217T (*rrs*)**	S	WT	R	A90V
3	R	L511R,D516V	R	S315T	G17T	nd	173 (G ins)	**S**	**M306I**	**S**	**A514C (*rrs*)**	R	A1401G	R	D94G
4	R	S531L	R	WT	C15T	nd	Y103STOP	S	WT	R	K43R (*rpsL*)	R	C1402T	R	D94G
5	R	S531L	R	S315T	WT	nd	L85R	S	WT	S	WT	S	WT	S	WT
6	R	D516V	**R**	**WT***	**WT**	nd	WT	S	WT	**S**	**C492T (*rrs*)**	S	WT	S	WT
7	R	S531W	R	S315N	WT	nd	WT	**S**	**M306V**	S	WT	R	A1401G	R	A90V
8	R	S531L	R	WT	C15T	nd	Y103STOP	**S**	**M306V**	R	K43R (*rpsL*)	**S**	**A1401G**	S	WT
9	R	S531L	R	L101P	WT	nd	18 (24 bp del)	**S**	**M306V**	R	A514C (*rrs*)	S	WT	S	WT
10	R	S531L	**R**	**WT**	**WT**	nd	L27R	**S**	**M306I**	S	WT	S	WT	S	WT
11	R	S531L	R	S315T	WT	nd	D8H	**S**	**M306I**	S	WT	S	WT	R	D94G
12	R	S531L	R	WT	C15T	nd	Y103STOP	**S**	**M306V**	R	K43R (*rpsL*)	S	WT	S	WT
13	R	H526Y	R	WT	C15T	nd	WT	S	WT	S	WT	**S**	**A1401G**	**S**	**A90V**

Discordance between phenotypic and genotypic drug susceptibility is highlighted in bold; R=resistant,S=susceptible, Sm=streptomycin,K=kanamycin,O=ofloxacin
Genotypic resistance indicates amino acid substitution (*rpoB,katG,pncA,embB,rpsL,gyrA*) or nucleotide substitution (*inhA,pncA,rrs*)
* resistance-conferring mutations were identified at later timepoints (see Table 7-4)

University of Cape Town

Table 7-3 Phenotypic and genotypic drug resistance in baseline MTB cultures.



University of Cape Town

Figure 7-1 IS*6110* fingerprints of MTB isolated from sputum of 3 patients at baseline, and after 6-56 weeks of additional treatment.

Rx	Patient #1			Patient #2			Patient #6				Patient #10	
(w)	*katG*	*embB*	*gyrA*	*pncA*	*gyrA*	*rrs*	*gyrA*	*pncA*	*rpoB*	*katG*	*gyrA*	*pncA*
0	WT	WT	WT	WT	A90V	G217T,C492T	WT	WT	D516V	WT	WT	L27R/WT
1	WT	WT	WT									
2	WT	WT	WT	**D12A/WT**	**D94Y**	**C492T**						
4	**G118A**	WT	WT									
6	G118A	**G406D**	**D94Y/WT**	**D12A**	D94Y	C492T	WT	WT	**S531W**	**E261K**		
8	**WT**	G406D	D94Y/WT	**D12A/WT**	D94Y	C492T	WT	WT	S531W	E261K	**D94G**	**WT**
12	WT	G406D	D94Y/WT	**D12A**	D94Y	C492T						
16	WT	G406D	D94Y/WT				WT	WT	S531W	E261K		
24	WT	G406D	D94Y/WT									
30	WT	G406D	**D94G**				WT	WT	S531W	**WT**		
36	WT	G406D	**D94Y**				**G88A**	**V157G**	S531W	**E261K**		
40	WT	G406D	**D94C/WT**				**WT**	**131 (GG ins)**	S531W	E261K		
44	WT	G406D	D94C/WT				**G88A/WT**	131 (GG ins)	S531W	E261K		
48	WT	G406D	D94C/WT				**WT**	131 (GG ins)	S531W	E261K		
52	WT	G406D	**D94G**				WT	131 (GG ins)	S531W	E261K		
56	WT	G406D	D94G									

Changes in genotype are highlighted in bold

University of Cape Town

Table 7-4 Genotypic polymorphism of selected *M.tuberculosis* genes.

some but not all the bacilli isolated at 1 time point. In 3 of these patients, different nucleotide substitutions accounted for drug resistance in bacillary subpopulations (*gyrA* D94G, D94Y and G94C for fluoroquinolone resistance in patient #1, *gyrA* A90V and D94Y in patient #2 and *rpoB* D516V and S531W for rifampin resistance in patient #6; both the *pncA* V157G substitution and 131GG insertion accounted for PZA resistance in patient #6). As seen in patients #1 and #6, INH susceptible isolates were still recovered several years after the patient had developed MDR-TB (Table 7-4).

7.4 DISCUSSION

Our studies show that the acquisition of drug resistance (which is a stochastic event) during the treatment of tuberculosis results in a mixture of subpopulations of bacilli, some of which are drug susceptible while others are drug resistant (Table 7-4). This may explain why the resistance phenotype reported by the diagnostic laboratory can change over time between susceptible to resistant and back to susceptible (depending on the population that predominates at the time of sputum sampling). Phenotypic drug resistance is commonly determined by the proportion method, where an MTB isolate is considered to be resistant to a particular drug if at least 1% of colonies grow on agar containing a critical concentration of that particular drug (2000). Consequently, the particular drug is often withdrawn or withheld (Blumberg, Burman, Chaisson, *et al.*, 2003; Iseman, 1993). Our observations suggest that it may not be prudent to withdraw the drug(s) following documentation of drug resistance. Rather, the existing drug(s) should be maintained to target the bacilli that are still drug susceptible. In addition new drugs (preferably at least two) should be added to the treatment regimen to target the newly drug resistant organisms.

Despite the very high disease burden and rates of TB transmission in the Western Cape and what appears to be constant exposure to TB in the environment (van Rie, Warren,

University of Cape Town

Richardson, *et al.*, 1999), the IS*6110* patterns of all 13 MTB isolates did not change over the study period (7.2 person-years of observation). Thus, no super-infection occurred and no change in the genetic background of the strains was noted. In most published studies, evolutionary changes in IS*6110* patterns occurred in fewer than 10% of patients, and it has been suggested that these events might be more frequent soon after infection when replication is most active (de Boer, Borgdorff, de Haas, *et al.*, 1999; Niemann, Richter and Rusch-Gerdes, 1999; Warren, Van Der Spuy, Richardson, *et al.*, 2002). The small number of patients in our study and the long periods of active disease prior to enrollment may have contributed to the lack of any IS*6110* instability in this study. In accordance with previous studies, acquisition of drug resistance mutations was not associated with changes of the IS*6110* profile (Niemann, Richter and Rusch-Gerdes, 1999; Yeh, Ponce de Leon, Agasino, *et al.*, 1998).

In our patients, 62% of disease was caused by MTB strains belonging to the W-Beijing family of strains (Bifani, Mathema, Kurepina, *et al.*, 2002). These strains comprise around 20% of all MTB isolates in the Western Cape (van Helden, Warren, Victor, *et al.*, 2002). The high frequency of W-Beijing strains seen in our study may simply reflect a sampling bias; however, it may reflect a specific predilection of this family of strains to developing drug resistance (Anh, Borgdorff, Van, *et al.*, 2000). W-Beijing isolates are considered highly successful from an epidemiologic perspective, and members of this family have caused outbreaks in institutions as well as many communities (Bifani, Mathema, Liu, *et al.*, 1999; van Rie, Warren, Beyers, *et al.*, 1999). Our study raises the possibility that certain W-Beijing strains may be more likely to acquire MDR. Alternatively, MDR W-Beijing strains may have a higher propensity to spread in the community. This is supported by higher baseline bacillary loads in sputum of patients infected with strains that are members of the W-Beijing family (Table 7-1).

University of Cape Town

In agreement with previous studies, we observed a good correlation between phenotypic and genotypic susceptibility for INH and RIF (Escalante, Ramaswamy, Sanabria, *et al.*, 1998; Laszlo, Rahman, Espinal, *et al.*, 2002; Torres, Criado, Palomares, *et al.*, 2000). The single patient in whom no *katG* or *inhA* mutations were identified may have had mutations in *kasA*, *ahpC* (Ramaswamy and Musser, 1998) or the recently identified INH target gene *ndh* encoding the enzyme NADH dehydrogenase (Lee, Teo and Wong, 2001). In contrast, phenotypic and genotypic susceptibility to EMB correlated poorly (Mokrousov, Otten, Vyshnevskiy, *et al.*, 2002; Van Rie, Warren, Mshanga, *et al.*, 2001) and, together with non-availability of susceptibility data for PZA, may have resulted in an overestimation of the number of active drugs in most of the patients. There is good evidence that a large number of active drugs can be effective in treating highly MDR-TB patients. A seven-drug regimen comprising of RIF, INH, PZA, EMB, clarithromycin, cycloserine, and ethionamide administered to patients with chronic MDR-TB for up to 55 months resulted in a remarkable 81% cure rate (1998). In addition, improved outcome of patients with MDR-TB maintained on INH together with the other drugs has been reported (Frieden, Sherman, Maw, *et al.*, 1996). The clinical benefit of INH therapy in these patients was thought to have been due to low or intermediate levels of resistance to the drug. Our results suggest that the improved outcome observed by Frieden *et al.* may also have related to activity of INH against susceptible bacillary subpopulations within the lungs of MDR-TB patients.

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

Chapter 8

CONCLUDING REMARKS

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

Mycobacterium tuberculosis (MTB) has been a human pathogen for centuries. Tuberculosis (TB), a predominantly pulmonary disease that results when MTB infection is inadequately contained by the host immune response, accounted for nearly a quarter of all deaths in the major European cities around 1800. The number of TB cases has markedly declined since, presumably as a result of the improvement in the standard of living and the introduction of chemotherapy. Consequently, it was anticipated that TB would disappear as a human disease. However, MTB has proved this prediction to be premature. Fuelled by the HIV epidemic, global rates of TB have soared over the last 15 years, particularly in the developing world, prompting the World Health Organization to declare tuberculosis a global emergency in 1993. Despite the relatively straightforward clinical features of pulmonary TB and the fairly simple diagnostic tools required to confirm infectious TB, many TB cases are not identified until extensive transmission of MTB has occurred. In addition, a substantial proportion of TB patients fail to complete the six months of therapy required for cure. These persons may develop drug-resistant TB, progressive lung tissue destruction resulting in respiratory failure, or chronic respiratory tract infections that may mimic or mask TB.

Tuberculosis develops when host immunity is unable or no longer able to control bacillary replication. Commonly, the initial infection is controlled when macrophages are activated by pathogen-specific T-lymphocytes, typically resulting in the formation of granulomas. The bacilli however are not eliminated by the immune response and are able to persist for decades within these lesions. Reactivation TB may develop when liquefaction of the necrotic center of a granuloma occurs and macrophages are no longer able to contain the bacilli. The ineffective immune response is associated with caseous necrosis and formation of pulmonary cavities. Bacilli are typically numerous at the surface of the cavity and, together with the caseous contents of the cavity, expectorated over time, thereby allowing MTB to establish infection in new, susceptible hosts.

University of Cape Town

Control of mycobacterial replication in the human lung requires the generation of T-cell mediated immunity. Efficient sensitization and expansion of T-lymphocytes that are able to recognize MTB infected macrophages depends on the production of interleukin-2 (IL-2) and IL-12 (and a number of other cytokines). These cells are recruited to the site of infection through the localized production of chemokines and expression of adhesion molecules on the vascular endothelium. Production of tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α) and interferon-gamma (IFN-γ) by the mononuclear cells allows activation of mycobacteriostatic, inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) mediated pathways in infected macrophages. In addition, $CD4^+$ T-cells, $CD8^+$ T-cells, and $CD4^-CD8^-$ T-cells may lyse MTB infected macrophages or induce apoptosis of the infected cells, either of which may be associated with reduced viability of the bacilli (Flynn and Chan, 2001). Since pro-inflammatory cytokines and MTB-reactive $CD4^+$, $CD8^+$, and $CD4^-CD8^-$ T-cells are readily demonstrable in TB patients, it remains difficult to understand why the immune response fails to control MTB infection in humans who develop TB.

We performed a detailed analysis of the host immune response in the lungs of six patients with chronic TB in whom the immune response had failed to control MTB infection. Three of these patients had developed active TB, which was successfully cured by chemotherapy. The other 3 patients had chronic active disease despite prolonged administration of multi-drug treatment. Two of these patients were infected with multi-drug resistant (MDR) MTB. Whereas only the lungs of patients with active TB showed macroscopic caseation, the lungs of all 3 patients with post-tuberculous lung disease who had been cured by chemotherapy contained microscopic foci of caseous necrosis as well as epithelioid granulomas without central necrosis. The presence of epithelioid as well as caseous necrotic granulomas suggested the presence of several micro-anatomical and/or immunologic environments. In the patients with active disease, numerous bacilli at the

University of Cape Town

luminal surface of the cavity suggested a failure of the immune response to control bacillary replication in this location. Below the necrotic zone, we noted an abundance of mononuclear cells as well as multi-nuclear giant cells. The virtual absence of acid-fast bacilli (AFB) at this site suggested that mycobacterial replication was adequately controlled. The demonstration of abundant IL-2, IL-12, IFN-γ and iNOS gene expression in the tissue samples underscored that TB in these patients did not result from a global deficiency or inability to produce these molecules, or a general lack of macrophage activation.

Immunophenotyping of the mononuclear cells in the various TB lesions revealed a striking absence of $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-lymphocytes from the surface of the cavity. It is possible that the cytokine gene expression levels reflected production of these proteins by activated $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells within the inflammatory cell infiltrate below the necrotic rim, where few if any bacilli were observed and macrophages showed signs of activation (epithelioid morphology and multi-nucleated giant cells). The selective exclusion of $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-lymphocytes from the surface of the cavity may explain the inability of the host to control mycobacterial replication despite the presence of appropriate cytokine signals and T-cell phenotypes in the TB lesions. Clearly, the $TIA\text{-}1^+$ cytotoxic T-cells (which may kill target cells by Fas-mediated apoptosis or granule exocytosis) had little if any effect on the replication of MTB within macrophages at the surface of the cavity. In addition, mycobacterial access to iron and carbon sources in the human lung appeared relatively unrestricted since the bacillary adaptive responses to iron limitation and carbon depletion were poorly induced. Since iron is an essential nutrient for most pathogens and iron restriction at the site of infection an important host defense mechanism, the relatively unrestricted access to iron and other nutrients presents another indication of impaired immunity at the surface of the cavity. However, since the patients from whom the lungs were

University of Cape Town

obtained all suffered from chronic, treatment refractory TB, these observations may not be representative of all TB patients.

By performing mycobacterial cultures on different TB lesions in the lung specimens, we wished to examine the contribution of infection with different MTB strains to the differences in granulomatous response within each patient. However, when up to 6 different pulmonary sites were cultured, a single MTB isolate was recovered from each lesion. In addition, IS*6110* fingerprinting failed to show genetic evolution among the bacilli recovered from the different lesions. Similar results were obtained when genotyping of up to 16 longitudinally collected sputum isolates from 13 patients with chronic, treatment-refractory MDR TB was performed. We thus obtained no evidence that pulmonary TB in these patients was caused by infection with more than one MTB isolate, and since these patients were living in an area with extremely high rates of MTB transmission, it would appear that while the immune response failed to control replication of the founder MTB strain, it prevented progressive infection with additional isolates to which the patients were undoubtedly exposed.

The contribution of MTB strain polymorphism to chronic TB was also examined by sequence analysis of several of the genes implicated in drug resistance. In contrast to the stability of the IS*6110* fingerprint, remarkable heterogeneity of the resistance-associated alleles was observed among MTB isolates recovered from different lung lesions as well as MTB isolates obtained from serial sputum specimens. The genetic drug resistance profiles of the lung isolates suggested that an initial infecting strain may spread from one pulmonary site to another, to become the founder for acquisition of additional antibiotic resistance at secondary sites. The additional drug resistance mutations were preferentially observed in *M. tuberculosis* cultured from the open granulomas, i.e. the cavities, where bacillary growth appeared to be most active. The presence of heterogeneous subpopulations of drug resistant

University of Cape Town

bacilli in the human lung suggest that drug-susceptibility tests performed on organisms isolated from the patient's sputum may not provide an accurate representation of the susceptibility of all bacterial sub-populations within the lung. In addition, sequence analysis of multiple sputum isolates revealed that drug-susceptible bacilli may remain present among the resistant bacilli for several months or years. Careful analysis of the level of drug-resistance as well as the size of bacillary subpopulations may therefore result in a recommendation in some patients to continue therapy with a first line or even a second line drug to which the sputum isolate has become resistant.

Genotypic analysis revealed that several of the patients with chronic TB were infected with MTB isolates that belonged to the W-Beijing family of strains (Bifani, Mathema, Kurepina, *et al.*, 2002). Whereas these isolates comprise approximately 17% of community isolates in Cape Town, we noted an increased prevalence of 35% among 200 consecutively obtained MDR isolates and 63% among the 16 patients with treatment-refractory TB. The relative enrichment of W-Beijing isolates among patients with MDR TB is in keeping with observations from South East Asia, where these isolates are highly prevalent and commonly drug-resistant (Anh, Borgdorff, Van, *et al.*, 2000). The increased sputum bacterial loads in our patients infected with W-Beijing isolates might be of relevance to their epidemiologic success. W-Beijing isolates have been associated with outbreaks in institutions as well as communities, more extensive disease in mice (Lopez, Aguilar, Orozco, *et al.*, 2003; Manca, Tsenova, Bergtold, *et al.*, 2001) and faster replication within human monocytes (Zhang, Gong, Yang, *et al.*, 1999). The propensity to cause more extensive disease may relate to their ability to induce rather weak pro-inflammatory cytokine responses and reduced T-cell activation. We noted that reduced cytokine production in patients with TB was associated with more severe lung disease. High bacillary loads may also contribute to the increased rates of drug resistance, since infrequent stochastic mutational events would be encountered more

University of Cape Town

frequently. It would be of considerable interest to compare *dnaE2* gene expression (Boshoff, Reed, Barry, *et al.*, 2003) in human lung tissue from patients infected with W-Beijing and other isolates to evaluate if increased expression of this low-fidelity DNA polymerase may further contribute to the increased frequency of drug resistance among W-Beijing isolates.

In addition to the studies of *M. tuberculosis* polymorphism in human lung and sputum samples, we examined the effects of well characterized, different or related mycobacterial strains on the innate responses of host phagocytes. Human monocytes and mouse macrophages were infected *in vitro* with the related MTB strains H37Ra and H37Rv, with polymorphic variants of *M. smegmatis* (*M. smegmatis* and. *M. smegmatis* 19kDa), or the genetically distinct clinical MTB isolates CDC1551 and HN878. Intracellular growth rates and production of immune regulatory cytokines by the infected phagocytes were measured.

The MTB strains H37Ra and H37Rv (Steenken and Gardner, 1946) are distinguished by their differential ability to cause progressive disease in mice and guinea pigs. In an attempt to understand the difference in virulence of the two strains, we evaluated their growth and TNF-α producing capacity in cultures of human monocytes and peritoneal macrophages from wild type and gene-disrupted mice. Similar growth of H37Ra and H37Rv was observed in human monocytes, and monocyte maturation resulted in growth restriction of both strains. In wild type mouse macrophages and macrophages deficient in iNOS, IFN-γ or the IFN-γ receptor, H37Rv grew logarithmically while growth of H37Ra slowed down significantly by 48h post infection. In contrast, mouse macrophages deficient in TNF-α were unable to control the growth of H37Ra. Infection of both mouse and human macrophages with H37Rv induced higher levels of TNF-α production than infection with H37Ra. These results suggest that growth restriction of H37Ra in mouse macrophages is mediated through a TNF-α dependent, iNOS and IFN-γ independent pathway, and that this pathway may be absent in human monocyte-derived macrophages (MDM).

University of Cape Town

The 19kDa lipoprotein of MTB (Young and Garbe, 1991), when expressed in *M. smegmatis* (*M. smegmatis* 19kDa), was shown to abrogate the limited protection against MTB challenge afforded to mice by the administration of *M. smegmatis*. To investigate the mechanism of this suppression of immunity, human MDM were infected with *M. smegmatis* or *M. smegmatis* 19kDa. Infection with *M. smegmatis* 19kDa resulted in reduced production of TNF-α, IL-12, IL-6 and IL-10 compared to infection with *M. smegmatis*. The 19kDa antigen had no differential effect on expression of co-stimulatory molecules on the surface of *M. smegmatis* infected MDM, nor did it affect the proliferation of pre-sensitized T-cells co-cultured with infected MDM. The immunosuppressive effect was dependent on the presence of glycosylated and acylated 19kDa lipoprotein in the mycobacteria-containing phagosomes. These results suggest that the diminished protection against challenge with *M. tuberculosis* seen in mice vaccinated with *M. smegmatis* expressing the 19kDa lipoprotein might have been the result of reduced pro-inflammatory cytokine production. These results contrast with the demonstrated potential of the 19kDa to stimulate IL-12 production through Toll-like receptor-2 (TLR-2) ligation, and suggest that the effect of the interaction between MTB antigens and host phagocyte receptors may depend on the cellular compartment in which immune recognition takes place, or the context in which receptor ligation occurs.

The MTB clinical isolates CDC1551 (Manca, Tsenova, Barry, *et al.*, 1999) and HN878 (Manca, Tsenova, Bergtold, *et al.*, 2001) are distinguished by their differential ability to cause pathology in mice. Infection of mice with HN878 results in delayed and reduced IL-12 and TNF-α production compared to infection with CDC1551, and this is associated with an approximately 10-fold higher bacillary load in the lungs and markedly impaired survival of the infected animals. In MTB infected mice therefore, a rapid and strong pro-inflammatory cytokine response in the lungs may be associated with less severe disease. When peripheral blood monocytes from patients with TB were infected with CDC1551 or HN878, reduced IL-

University of Cape Town

12, TNF-α and IL-6 production by HN878 infected monocytes was observed, and HN878 displayed faster intracellular replication than CDC1551. Reduced TNF-α and IL-6 production in response to MTB infection may have resulted in decreased cellular activation and impaired innate resistance to intracellular mycobacterial growth *in vitro*.

When cytokine production by MTB infected monocytes and intracellular bacillary growth rates were compared for cells obtained from patients with limited pulmonary disease and monocytes from patients with extensive disease on chest radiograph, it was noted that monocytes from patients with more extensive disease produced lower amounts of IL-12, TNF-α and IL-6 in response to infection, and that these cells were more permissive for bacillary replication. Reduced IL-12 and TNF-α production by the monocytes from patients with extensive disease concurred with the plasma measurements of these cytokines. In addition to the direct effects of TNF-α and IL-6 on monocyte activation, reduced IL-12 and TNF-α production may also have resulted in reduced T-lymphocyte sensitization and IFN-γ induced mycobacteriostasis. Taken together, these observations support the idea that robust pro-inflammatory cytokine responses to MTB may limit the extent of pulmonary disease in humans.

The mouse model of TB has provided valuable and detailed insight in the host defense mechanisms against MTB. However, substantial differences exist in the ability of human and murine phagocytes to control the growth of *M. tuberculosis* H37Ra and *M. bovis BCG*. In addition, the histology of human and mouse pulmonary TB differs substantially, with cavitation, caseous necrosis, the presence of multi-nuclear giant cells and extensive fibrosis being the pathognomonic features of human disease. Finally, the dramatic differences in gene expression profile of *M. tuberculosis* residing in human and mouse lungs suggest that the microenvironment to which MTB is exposed may vary considerably between the two host species. These differences underscore the importance of studying TB patients as

University of Cape Town

well as humans infected with MTB to advance our knowledge of protective immunity and the reasons for immunologic failure. This knowledge may serve to direct vaccine development and predict vaccine efficacy.

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town

REFERENCES

1. **1972**. Controlled clinical trial of short-course (6-month) regimens of chemotherapy for treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Lancet **1**:1079-85.

2. **1973**. Controlled clinical trial of four short-course (6-month) regimens of chemotherapy for treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Second report. Lancet **1**:1331-8.

3. **1974**. Controlled clinical trial of four short-course (6-month) regimens of chemotherapy for treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Lancet **2**:1100-6.

4. **1974**. Controlled clinical trial of four short-course (6-month) regimens of chemotherapy for treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. Third report. East African-British Medical Research Councils. Lancet **2**:237-40.

5. **1981**. Clinical trial of six-month and four-month regimens of chemotherapy in the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis: the results up to 30 months. Tubercle **62**:95-102.

6. **1981**. Controlled clinical trial of five short-course (4-month) chemotherapy regimens in pulmonary tuberculosis. Second report of the 4th study. East African/British Medical Research Councils Study. Am Rev Respir Dis **123**:165-70.

7. **1982**. Controlled trial of 4 three-times-weekly regimens and a daily regimen all given for 6 months for pulmonary tuberculosis. Second report: the results up to 24 months. Hong Kong Chest Service/British Medical Research Council. Tubercle **63**:89-98.

8. **1982**. A controlled trial of six months chemotherapy in pulmonary tuberculosis. Second report: results during the 24 months after the end of chemotherapy. British Thoracic Association. Am Rev Respir Dis **126**:460-2.

9. **1992**. Control of tuberculosis in the United States. American Thoracic Society. Am Rev Respir Dis **146**:1623-33.

10. **1998**. Outcome of second-line tuberculosis treatment in migrants from Vietnam. International Organization for Migration (IOM) Tuberculosis Working Group. Trop Med Int Health **3**:975-80.

11. **1999**. Immunotherapy with Mycobacterium vaccae in patients with newly diagnosed pulmonary tuberculosis: a randomised controlled trial. Durban Immunotherapy Trial Group. Lancet **354**:116-9.

12. **1999**. Primary multidrug-resistant tuberculosis - Ivanovo Oblast, Russia, 1999. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep **48**:661-664.

13. **2000**. Diagnostic Standards and Classification of Tuberculosis in Adults and Children. This official statement of the American Thoracic Society and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention was adopted by the ATS Board of Directors, July

University of Cape Town

1999. This statement was endorsed by the Council of the Infectious Disease Society of America, September 1999. Am J Respir Crit Care Med **161**:1376-95.

14. Abel B, Thieblemont N, Quesniaux VJ, Brown N, Mpagi J, Miyake K, Bihl F and Ryffel B, **2002**. Toll-like receptor 4 expression is required to control chronic Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection in mice. J Immunol **169**:3155-62.

15. Abou-Zeid C, Gares MP, Inwald J, Janssen R, Zhang Y, Young DB, Hetzel C, Lamb JR, Baldwin SL, Orme IM, Yeremeev V, Nikonenko BV and Apt AS, **1997**. Induction of a type 1 immune response to a recombinant antigen from Mycobacterium tuberculosis expressed in Mycobacterium vaccae. Infect Immun **65**:1856-62.

16. Ackah AN, Coulibaly D, Digbeu H, Diallo K, Vetter KM, Coulibaly IM, Greenberg AE and De Cock KM, **1995**. Response to treatment, mortality, and CD4 lymphocyte counts in HIV-infected persons with tuberculosis in Abidjan, Cote d'Ivoire. Lancet **345**:607-10.

17. Aderem A and Ulevitch RJ, **2000**. Toll-like receptors in the induction of the innate immune response. Nature **406**:782-7.

18. Afonso LC, Scharton TM, Vieira LQ, Wysocka M, Trinchieri G and Scott P, **1994**. The adjuvant effect of interleukin-12 in a vaccine against Leishmania major. Science **263**:235-7.

19. Aisu T, Raviglione MC, van Praag E, Eriki P, Narain JP, Barugahare L, Tembo G, McFarland D and Engwau FA, **1995**. Preventive chemotherapy for HIV-associated tuberculosis in Uganda: an operational assessment at a voluntary counselling and testing centre. AIDS **9**:267-73.

20. Aliprantis AO, Yang RB, Mark MR, Suggett S, Devaux B, Radolf JD, Klimpel GR, Godowski P and Zychlinsky A, **1999**. Cell activation and apoptosis by bacterial lipoproteins through toll- like receptor-2. Science **285**:736-9.

21. Alland D, Kalkut GE, Moss AR, McAdam RA, Hahn JA, Bosworth W, Drucker E and Bloom BR, **1994**. Transmission of tuberculosis in New York City. An analysis by DNA fingerprinting and conventional epidemiologic methods. N Engl J Med **330**:1710-6.

22. Altare F, Durandy A, Lammas D, Emile JF, Lamhamedi S, Le Deist F, Drysdale P, Jouanguy E, Doffinger R, Bernaudin F, Jeppsson O, Gollob JA, Meinl E, Segal AW, Fischer A, Kumararatne D and Casanova JL, **1998**. Impairment of mycobacterial immunity in human interleukin-12 receptor deficiency. Science **280**:1432-5.

23. Altare F, Ensser A, Breiman A, Reichenbach J, Baghdadi JE, Fischer A, Emile JF, Gaillard JL, Meinl E and Casanova JL, **2001**. Interleukin-12 receptor beta1 deficiency in a patient with abdominal tuberculosis. J Infect Dis **184**:231-6.

24. Altare F, Lammas D, Revy P, Jouanguy E, Doffinger R, Lamhamedi S, Drysdale P, Scheel-Toellner D, Girdlestone J, Darbyshire P, Wadhwa M, Dockrell H, Salmon M,

University of Cape Town

Fischer A, Durandy A, Casanova JL and Kumararatne DS, **1998**. Inherited interleukin 12 deficiency in a child with bacille Calmette- Guerin and Salmonella enteritidis disseminated infection. J Clin Invest **102**:2035-40.

25. Andersen P, Askgaard D, Ljungqvist L, Bentzon MW and Heron I, **1991**. T-cell proliferative response to antigens secreted by Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Infect Immun **59**:1558-63.

26. Anderson P, Nagler-Anderson C, O'Brien C, Levine H, Watkins S, Slayter HS, Blue ML and Schlossman SF, **1990**. A monoclonal antibody reactive with a 15-kDa cytoplasmic granule- associated protein defines a subpopulation of CD8+ T lymphocytes. J Immunol **144**:574-82.

27. Anh DD, Borgdorff MW, Van LN, Lan NT, van Gorkom T, Kremer K and van Soolingen D, **2000**. Mycobacterium tuberculosis Beijing genotype emerging in Vietnam. Emerg Infect Dis **6**:302-5.

28. Appelberg R and Orme IM, **1993**. Effector mechanisms involved in cytokine-mediated bacteriostasis of Mycobacterium avium infections in murine macrophages. Immunology **80**:352-9.

29. Appelberg R, Sarmento A and Castro AG, **1995**. Tumour necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-alpha) in the host resistance to mycobacteria of distinct virulence. Clin Exp Immunol **101**:308-13.

30. Armitige LY, Jagannath C, Wanger AR and Norris SJ, **2000**. Disruption of the genes encoding antigen 85A and antigen 85B of Mycobacterium tuberculosis H37Rv: effect on growth in culture and in macrophages. Infect Immun **68**:767-78.

31. Arruda S, Bomfim G, Knights R, Huima-Byron T and Riley LW, **1993**. Cloning of an M. tuberculosis DNA fragment associated with entry and survival inside cells. Science **261**:1454-7.

32. Ashbridge KR, Backstrom BT, Liu HX, Vikerfors T, Englebretsen DR, Harding DR and Watson JD, **1992**. Mapping of T helper cell epitopes by using peptides spanning the 19-kDa protein of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Evidence for unique and shared epitopes in the stimulation of antibody and delayed-type hypersensitivity responses. J Immunol **148**:2248-55.

33. Ashbridge KR, Booth RJ, Watson JD and Lathigra RB, **1989**. Nucleotide sequence of the 19 kDa antigen gene from Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Nucleic Acids Res **17**:1249.

34. Ashbridge KR, Prestidge RL, Booth RJ and Watson JD, **1990**. The mapping of an antibody-binding region on the Mycobacterium tuberculosis 19 kilodalton antigen. J Immunol **144**:3137-42.

35. Awomoyi AA, Marchant A, Howson JM, McAdam KP, Blackwell JM and Newport MJ, **2002**. Interleukin-10, Polymorphism in SLC11A1 (formerly NRAMP1), and Susceptibility to Tuberculosis. J Infect Dis **186**:1808-14.

University of Cape Town

36. Badri M, Wilson D and Wood R, **2002**. Effect of highly active antiretroviral therapy on incidence of tuberculosis in South Africa: a cohort study. Lancet **359**:2059-64.

37. Baird MA, Hart DN, Abernethy N and Watson JD, **1995**. Dendritic cell presentation of PPD and 19 kDa protein of Mycobacterium tuberculosis and emergent T helper cell phenotype. Immunol Cell Biol **73**:537-43.

38. Balcewicz-Sablinska MK, Keane J, Kornfeld H and Remold HG, **1998**. Pathogenic Mycobacterium tuberculosis evades apoptosis of host macrophages by release of TNF-R2, resulting in inactivation of TNF- alpha. J Immunol **161**:2636-41.

39. Baldwin SL, D'Souza C, Roberts AD, Kelly BP, Frank AA, Lui MA, Ulmer JB, Huygen K, McMurray DM and Orme IM, **1998**. Evaluation of new vaccines in the mouse and guinea pig model of tuberculosis. Infect Immun **66**:2951-9.

40. Banerjee A, Dubnau E, Quemard A, Balasubramanian V, Um KS, Wilson T, Collins D, de Lisle G and Jacobs WR, Jr., **1994**. inhA, a gene encoding a target for isoniazid and ethionamide in Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Science **263**:227-30.

41. Barnes PF, Bloch AB, Davidson PT and Snider DE, Jr., **1991**. Tuberculosis in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. N Engl J Med **324**:1644-50.

42. Barnes PF, Fong SJ, Brennan PJ, Twomey PE, Mazumder A and Modlin RL, **1990**. Local production of tumor necrosis factor and IFN-gamma in tuberculous pleuritis. J Immunol **145**:149-54.

43. Barnes PF, Lu S, Abrams JS, Wang E, Yamamura M and Modlin RL, **1993**. Cytokine production at the site of disease in human tuberculosis. Infect Immun **61**:3482-9.

44. Barry CE, 3rd, **2001**. Interpreting cell wall 'virulence factors' of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Trends Microbiol **9**:237-41.

45. Bean AG, Roach DR, Briscoe H, France MP, Korner H, Sedgwick JD and Britton WJ, **1999**. Structural deficiencies in granuloma formation in TNF gene-targeted mice underlie the heightened susceptibility to aerosol Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection, which is not compensated for by lymphotoxin. J Immunol **162**:3504-11.

46. Beatty WL, Rhoades ER, Ullrich HJ, Chatterjee D, Heuser JE and Russell DG, **2000**. Trafficking and release of mycobacterial lipids from infected macrophages. Traffic **1**:235-47.

47. Beck F and Yegian D, **1952**. A study of the tubercle bacillus in resected pulmonary lesions. Am Rev Tuberc **66**:44-51.

48. Beckman EM, Porcelli SA, Morita CT, Behar SM, Furlong ST and Brenner MB, **1994**. Recognition of a lipid antigen by CD1-restricted alpha beta+ T cells. Nature **372**:691-4.

University of Cape Town

49. Behar SM, Dascher CC, Grusby MJ, Wang CR and Brenner MB, **1999**. Susceptibility of mice deficient in CD1D or TAP1 to infection with Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Exp Med **189**:1973-80.

50. Behr MA, **2002**. BCG--different strains, different vaccines? Lancet Infect Dis **2**:86-92.

51. Behr MA, Warren SA, Salamon H, Hopewell PC, Ponce de Leon A, Daley CL and Small PM, **1999**. Transmission of Mycobacterium tuberculosis from patients smear-negative for acid-fast bacilli. Lancet **353**:444-9.

52. Behr MA, Wilson MA, Gill WP, Salamon H, Schoolnik GK, Rane S and Small PM, **1999**. Comparative genomics of BCG vaccines by whole-genome DNA microarray. Science **284**:1520-3.

53. Bekker LG, Freeman S, Murray PJ, Ryffel B and Kaplan G, **2001**. TNF-alpha controls intracellular mycobacterial growth by both inducible nitric oxide synthase-dependent and inducible nitric oxide synthase- independent pathways. J Immunol **166**:6728-34.

54. Bekker LG, Maartens G, Steyn L and Kaplan G, **1998**. Selective increase in plasma tumor necrosis factor-alpha and concomitant clinical deterioration after initiating therapy in patients with severe tuberculosis. J Infect Dis **178**:580-4.

55. Bekker LG, Moreira AL, Bergtold A, Freeman S, Ryffel B and Kaplan G, **2000**. Immunopathologic effects of tumor necrosis factor alpha in murine mycobacterial infection are dose dependent. Infect Immun **68**:6954-61.

56. Belanger AE, Besra GS, Ford ME, Mikusova K, Belisle JT, Brennan PJ and Inamine JM, **1996**. The embAB genes of Mycobacterium avium encode an arabinosyl transferase involved in cell wall arabinan biosynthesis that is the target for the antimycobacterial drug ethambutol. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **93**:11919-24.

57. Bellamy R, Ruwende C, Corrah T, McAdam KP, Thursz M, Whittle HC and Hill AV, **1999**. Tuberculosis and chronic hepatitis B virus infection in Africans and variation in the vitamin D receptor gene. J Infect Dis **179**:721-4.

58. Bellamy R, Ruwende C, Corrah T, McAdam KP, Whittle HC and Hill AV, **1998**. Assessment of the interleukin 1 gene cluster and other candidate gene polymorphisms in host susceptibility to tuberculosis. Tuber Lung Dis **79**:83-9.

59. Bellamy R, Ruwende C, Corrah T, McAdam KP, Whittle HC and Hill AV, **1998**. Variations in the NRAMP1 gene and susceptibility to tuberculosis in West Africans. N Engl J Med **338**:640-4.

60. Benator D, Bhattacharya M, Bozeman L, Burman W, Cantazaro A, Chaisson R, Gordin F, Horsburgh CR, Horton J, Khan A, Lahart C, Metchock B, Pachucki C, Stanton L, Vernon A, Villarino ME, Wang YC, Weiner M and Weis S, **2002**. Rifapentine and isoniazid once a week versus rifampicin and isoniazid twice a week

University of Cape Town

for treatment of drug-susceptible pulmonary tuberculosis in HIV-negative patients: a randomised clinical trial. Lancet **360**:528-34.

61. Bergeron A, Bonay M, Kambouchner M, Lecossier D, Riquet M, Soler P, Hance A and Tazi A, **1997**. Cytokine patterns in tuberculous and sarcoid granulomas: correlations with histopathologic features of the granulomatous response. J Immunol **159**:3034-43.

62. Bermudez LE and Goodman J, **1996**. Mycobacterium tuberculosis invades and replicates within type II alveolar cells. Infect Immun **64**:1400-6.

63. Bermudez LE and Young LS, **1988**. Tumor necrosis factor, alone or in combination with IL-2, but not IFN-gamma, is associated with macrophage killing of Mycobacterium avium complex. J Immunol **140**:3006-13.

64. Berthet FX, Lagranderie M, Gounon P, Laurent-Winter C, Ensergueix D, Chavarot P, Thouron F, Maranghi E, Pelicic V, Portnoi D, Marchal G and Gicquel B, **1998**. Attenuation of virulence by disruption of the Mycobacterium tuberculosis erp gene. Science **282**:759-62.

65. Bifani P, Moghazeh S, Shopsin B, Driscoll J, Ravikovitch A and Kreiswirth BN, **2000**. Molecular characterization of Mycobacterium tuberculosis H37Rv/Ra variants: distinguishing the mycobacterial laboratory strain. J Clin Microbiol **38**:3200-4.

66. Bifani PJ, Mathema B, Kurepina NE and Kreiswirth BN, **2002**. Global dissemination of the Mycobacterium tuberculosis W-Beijing family strains. Trends Microbiol **10**:45-52.

67. Bifani PJ, Mathema B, Liu Z, Moghazeh SL, Shopsin B, Tempalski B, Driscol J, Frothingham R, Musser JM, Alcabes P and Kreiswirth BN, **1999**. Identification of a W variant outbreak of Mycobacterium tuberculosis via population-based molecular epidemiology. JAMA **282**:2321-7.

68. Bifani PJ, Plikaytis BB, Kapur V, Stockbauer K, Pan X, Lutfey ML, Moghazeh SL, Eisner W, Daniel TM, Kaplan MH, Crawford JT, Musser JM and Kreiswirth BN, **1996**. Origin and interstate spread of a New York City multidrug-resistant Mycobacterium tuberculosis clone family. JAMA **275**:452-7.

69. Bishai WR, Dannenberg AM, Jr., Parrish N, Ruiz R, Chen P, Zook BC, Johnson W, Boles JW and Pitt ML, **1999**. Virulence of Mycobacterium tuberculosis CDC1551 and H37Rv in rabbits evaluated by Lurie's pulmonary tubercle count method. Infect Immun **67**:4931-4.

70. Black GF, Weir RE, Floyd S, Bliss L, Warndorff DK, Crampin AC, Ngwira B, Sichali L, Nazareth B, Blackwell JM, Branson K, Chaguluka SD, Donovan L, Jarman E, King E, Fine PE and Dockrell HM, **2002**. BCG-induced increase in interferon-gamma response to mycobacterial antigens and efficacy of BCG vaccination in Malawi and the UK: two randomised controlled studies. Lancet **359**:1393-401.

University of Cape Town

71. Bloom BR and Murray CJ, **1992**. Tuberculosis: commentary on a reemergent killer. Science **257**:1055-64.

72. Blumberg HM, Burman WJ, Chaisson RE, Daley CL, Etkind SC, Friedman LN, Fujiwara P, Grzemska M, Hopewell PC, Iseman MD, Jasmer RM, Koppaka V, Menzies RI, O'Brien RJ, Reves RR, Reichman LB, Simone PM, Starke JR and Vernon AA, **2003**. American Thoracic Society/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention/Infectious Diseases Society of America: treatment of tuberculosis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med **167**:603-62.

73. Bonato VL, Lima VM, Tascon RE, Lowrie DB and Silva CL, **1998**. Identification and characterization of protective T cells in hsp65 DNA- vaccinated and Mycobacterium tuberculosis-infected mice. Infect Immun **66**:169-75.

74. Boom WH, Husson RN, Young RA, David JR and Piessens WF, **1987**. In vivo and in vitro characterization of murine T-cell clones reactive to Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Infect Immun **55**:2223-9.

75. Boshoff HI, Reed MB, Barry CE, 3rd and Mizrahi V, **2003**. DnaE2 polymerase contributes to in vivo survival and the emergence of drug resistance in Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Cell **113**:183-93.

76. Bothamley GH, Beck JS, Schreuder GM, D'Amaro J, de Vries RR, Kardjito T and Ivanyi J, **1989**. Association of tuberculosis and M. tuberculosis-specific antibody levels with HLA. J Infect Dis **159**:549-55.

77. Brandt L, Elhay M, Rosenkrands I, Lindblad EB and Andersen P, **2000**. ESAT-6 subunit vaccination against Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Infect Immun **68**:791-5.

78. Brightbill HD, Libraty DH, Krutzik SR, Yang RB, Belisle JT, Bleharski JR, Maitland M, Norgard MV, Plevy SE, Smale ST, Brennan PJ, Bloom BR, Godowski PJ and Modlin RL, **1999**. Host defense mechanisms triggered by microbial lipoproteins through toll-like receptors. Science **285**:732-6.

79. Brosch R, Gordon SV, Marmiesse M, Brodin P, Buchrieser C, Eiglmeier K, Garnier T, Gutierrez C, Hewinson G, Kremer K, Parsons LM, Pym AS, Samper S, van Soolingen D and Cole ST, **2002**. A new evolutionary scenario for the Mycobacterium tuberculosis complex. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **99**:3684-9.

80. Brosch R, Philipp WJ, Stavropoulos E, Colston MJ, Cole ST and Gordon SV, **1999**. Genomic analysis reveals variation between Mycobacterium tuberculosis H37Rv and the attenuated M. tuberculosis H37Ra strain. Infect Immun **67**:5768-74.

81. Byrd TF, **1997**. Tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNFalpha) promotes growth of virulent Mycobacterium tuberculosis in human monocytes iron-mediated growth suppression is correlated with decreased release of TNFalpha from iron-treated infected monocytes. J Clin Invest **99**:2518-29.

University of Cape Town

82. Caceres NE, Harris NB, Wellehan JF, Feng Z, Kapur V and Barletta RG, **1997**. Overexpression of the D-alanine racemase gene confers resistance to D- cycloserine in Mycobacterium smegmatis. J Bacteriol **179**:5046-55.

83. Camacho LR, Ensergueix D, Perez E, Gicquel B and Guilhot C, **1999**. Identification of a virulence gene cluster of Mycobacterium tuberculosis by signature-tagged transposon mutagenesis. Mol Microbiol **34**:257-67.

84. Canetti G, **1965**. Present aspects of bacterial resistance in tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis **92**:687-703.

85. Caruso AM, Serbina N, Klein E, Triebold K, Bloom BR and Flynn JL, **1999**. Mice deficient in CD4 T cells have only transiently diminished levels of IFN-gamma, yet succumb to tuberculosis. J Immunol **162**:5407-16.

86. Cervino AC, Lakiss S, Sow O and Hill AV, **2000**. Allelic association between the NRAMP1 gene and susceptibility to tuberculosis in Guinea-Conakry. Ann Hum Genet **64**:507-12.

87. Chackerian AA, Alt JM, Perera TV, Dascher CC and Behar SM, **2002**. Dissemination of Mycobacterium tuberculosis is influenced by host factors and precedes the initiation of T-cell immunity. Infect Immun **70**:4501-9.

88. Chackerian AA, Perera TV and Behar SM, **2001**. Gamma interferon-producing CD4+ T lymphocytes in the lung correlate with resistance to infection with Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Infect Immun **69**:2666-74.

89. Chan J, Tanaka K, Carroll D, Flynn J and Bloom BR, **1995**. Effects of nitric oxide synthase inhibitors on murine infection with Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Infect Immun **63**:736-40.

90. Chan J, Xing Y, Magliozzo RS and Bloom BR, **1992**. Killing of virulent Mycobacterium tuberculosis by reactive nitrogen intermediates produced by activated murine macrophages. J Exp Med **175**:1111-22.

91. Chan SH, Perussia B, Gupta JW, Kobayashi M, Pospisil M, Young HA, Wolf SF, Young D, Clark SC and Trinchieri G, **1991**. Induction of interferon gamma production by natural killer cell stimulatory factor: characterization of the responder cells and synergy with other inducers. J Exp Med **173**:869-79.

92. Chang JC, Wysocki A, Tchou-Wong KM, Moskowitz N, Zhang Y and Rom WN, **1996**. Effect of Mycobacterium tuberculosis and its components on macrophages and the release of matrix metalloproteinases. Thorax **51**:306-11.

93. Chehimi J, Starr SE, Frank I, Rengaraju M, Jackson SJ, Llanes C, Kobayashi M, Perussia B, Young D, Nickbarg E and et al., **1992**. Natural killer (NK) cell stimulatory factor increases the cytotoxic activity of NK cells from both healthy donors and human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients. J Exp Med **175**:789-96.

University of Cape Town

94. Cho S, Mehra V, Thoma-Uszynski S, Stenger S, Serbina N, Mazzaccaro RJ, Flynn JL, Barnes PF, Southwood S, Celis E, Bloom BR, Modlin RL and Sette A, **2000**. Antimicrobial activity of MHC class I-restricted CD8+ T cells in human tuberculosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **97**:12210-5.

95. Clemens DL and Horwitz MA, **1995**. Characterization of the Mycobacterium tuberculosis phagosome and evidence that phagosomal maturation is inhibited. J Exp Med **181**:257-70.

96. Cohen T, Sommers B and Murray M, **2003**. The effect of drug resistance on the fitness of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Lancet Infect Dis **3**:13-21.

97. Cohn ZA and Benson B, **1965**. The in vitro differentiation of mononuclear phagocytes. 3. The reversibility of granule and hydrolytic enzyme formation and the turnover of granule constituents. J Exp Med **122**:455-66.

98. Colditz GA, Brewer TF, Berkey CS, Wilson ME, Burdick E, Fineberg HV and Mosteller F, **1994**. Efficacy of BCG vaccine in the prevention of tuberculosis. Meta-analysis of the published literature. JAMA **271**:698-702.

99. Cole ST, Brosch R, Parkhill J, Garnier T, Churcher C, Harris D, Gordon SV, Eiglmeier K, Gas S, Barry CE, 3rd, Tekaia F, Badcock K, Basham D, Brown D, Chillingworth T, Connor R, Davies R, Devlin K, Feltwell T, Gentles S, Hamlin N, Holroyd S, Hornsby T, Jagels K, Barrell BG and et al., **1998**. Deciphering the biology of Mycobacterium tuberculosis from the complete genome sequence. Nature **393**:537-44.

100. Collins DM, Kawakami RP, de Lisle GW, Pascopella L, Bloom BR and Jacobs WR, Jr., **1995**. Mutation of the principal sigma factor causes loss of virulence in a strain of the Mycobacterium tuberculosis complex. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **92**:8036-40.

101. Collins ME, Patki A, Wall S, Nolan A, Goodger J, Woodward MJ and Dale JW, **1990**. Cloning and characterization of the gene for the '19 kDa' antigen of Mycobacterium bovis. J Gen Microbiol **136**:1429-36.

102. Comstock GW, Livesay VT and Woolpert SF, **1974**. The prognosis of a positive tuberculin reaction in childhood and adolescence. Am J Epidemiol **99**:131-8.

103. Condos R, Rom WN, Liu YM and Schluger NW, **1998**. Local immune responses correlate with presentation and outcome in tuberculosis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med **157**:729-35.

104. Condos R, Rom WN and Schluger NW, **1997**. Treatment of multidrug-resistant pulmonary tuberculosis with interferon- gamma via aerosol. Lancet **349**:1513-5.

105. Cooper AM, Dalton DK, Stewart TA, Griffin JP, Russell DG and Orme IM, **1993**. Disseminated tuberculosis in interferon gamma gene-disrupted mice. J Exp Med **178**:2243-7.

University of Cape Town

106. Cooper AM, D'Souza C, Frank AA and Orme IM, **1997**. The course of Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection in the lungs of mice lacking expression of either perforin- or granzyme-mediated cytolytic mechanisms. Infect Immun **65**:1317-20.

107. Cooper AM, Magram J, Ferrante J and Orme IM, **1997**. Interleukin 12 (IL-12) is crucial to the development of protective immunity in mice intravenously infected with mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Exp Med **186**:39-45.

108. Cooper AM, Roberts AD, Rhoades ER, Callahan JE, Getzy DM and Orme IM, **1995**. The role of interleukin-12 in acquired immunity to Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection. Immunology **84**:423-32.

109. Corbett EL, Steketee RW, ter Kuile FO, Latif AS, Kamali A and Hayes RJ, **2002**. HIV-1/AIDS and the control of other infectious diseases in Africa. Lancet **359**:2177-87.

110. Cox JS, Chen B, McNeil M and Jacobs WR, Jr., **1999**. Complex lipid determines tissue-specific replication of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in mice. Nature **402**:79-83.

111. Crowle AJ and Elkins N, **1990**. Relative permissiveness of macrophages from black and white people for virulent tubercle bacilli. Infect Immun **58**:632-8.

112. Cutler RR, Wilson P, Villarroel J and Clarke FV, **1997**. Evaluating current methods for determination of the susceptibility of mycobacteria to pyrazinamide, conventional, radiometric Bactec and two methods of pyrazinamidase testing. Lett Appl Microbiol **24**:127-32.

113. Daley CL, Small PM, Schecter GF, Schoolnik GK, McAdam RA, Jacobs WR, Jr. and Hopewell PC, **1992**. An outbreak of tuberculosis with accelerated progression among persons infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. An analysis using restriction-fragment-length polymorphisms. N Engl J Med **326**:231-5.

114. Dalton DK, Pitts-Meek S, Keshav S, Figari IS, Bradley A and Stewart TA, **1993**. Multiple defects of immune cell function in mice with disrupted interferon-gamma genes. Science **259**:1739-42.

115. David HL, Takayama K and Goldman DS, **1969**. Susceptibility of mycobacterial D-alanyl-D-alanine synthetase to D- cycloserine. Am Rev Respir Dis **100**:579-81.

116. de Boer AS, Borgdorff MW, de Haas PE, Nagelkerke NJ, van Embden JD and van Soolingen D, **1999**. Analysis of rate of change of IS6110 RFLP patterns of Mycobacterium tuberculosis based on serial patient isolates. J Infect Dis **180**:1238-44.

117. de Jong R, Altare F, Haagen IA, Elferink DG, Boer T, van Breda Vriesman PJ, Kabel PJ, Draaisma JM, van Dissel JT, Kroon FP, Casanova JL and Ottenhoff TH, **1998**. Severe mycobacterial and Salmonella infections in interleukin-12 receptor-deficient patients. Science **280**:1435-8.

University of Cape Town

118. De Voss JJ, Rutter K, Schroeder BG and Barry CE, 3rd, **1999**. Iron acquisition and metabolism by mycobacteria. J Bacteriol **181**:4443-51.

119. De Voss JJ, Rutter K, Schroeder BG, Su H, Zhu Y and Barry CE, 3rd, **2000**. The salicylate-derived mycobactin siderophores of Mycobacterium tuberculosis are essential for growth in macrophages. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **97**:1252-7.

120. De Wit D, Steyn L, Shoemaker S and Sogin M, **1990**. Direct detection of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in clinical specimens by DNA amplification. J Clin Microbiol **28**:2437-41.

121. Delgado JC, Baena A, Thim S and Goldfeld AE, **2002**. Ethnic-specific genetic associations with pulmonary tuberculosis. J Infect Dis **186**:1463-8.

122. Delgado JC, Tsai EY, Thim S, Baena A, Boussiotis VA, Reynes JM, Sath S, Grosjean P, Yunis EJ and Goldfeld AE, **2002**. Antigen-specific and persistent tuberculin anergy in a cohort of pulmonary tuberculosis patients from rural Cambodia. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **99**:7576-81.

123. DeMaio J, Zhang Y, Ko C, Young DB and Bishai WR, **1996**. A stationary-phase stress-response sigma factor from Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **93**:2790-4.

124. Denis M, **1991**. Interferon-gamma-treated murine macrophages inhibit growth of tubercle bacilli via the generation of reactive nitrogen intermediates. Cell Immunol **132**:150-7.

125. Denis M and Gregg EO, **1990**. Recombinant tumour necrosis factor-alpha decreases whereas recombinant interleukin-6 increases growth of a virulent strain of Mycobacterium avium in human macrophages. Immunology **71**:139-41.

126. Denis M, Gregg EO and Ghandirian E, **1990**. Cytokine modulation of Mycobacterium tuberculosis growth in human macrophages. Int J Immunopharmacol **12**:721-7.

127. Devergne O, Marfaing-Koka A, Schall TJ, Leger-Ravet MB, Sadick M, Peuchmaur M, Crevon MC, Kim KJ, Schall TT, Kim T and et al., **1994**. Production of the RANTES chemokine in delayed-type hypersensitivity reactions: involvement of macrophages and endothelial cells. J Exp Med **179**:1689-94.

128. Di Perri G, Cruciani M, Danzi MC, Luzzati R, De Checchi G, Malena M, Pizzighella S, Mazzi R, Solbiati M, Concia E and et al., **1989**. Nosocomial epidemic of active tuberculosis among HIV-infected patients. Lancet **2**:1502-4.

129. Dieli F, Troye-Blomberg M, Ivanyi J, Fournie JJ, Bonneville M, Peyrat MA, Sireci G and Salerno A, **2000**. Vgamma9/Vdelta2 T lymphocytes reduce the viability of intracellular Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Eur J Immunol **30**:1512-9.

130. Dieli F, Troye-Blomberg M, Ivanyi J, Fournie JJ, Krensky AM, Bonneville M, Peyrat MA, Caccamo N, Sireci G and Salerno A, **2001**. Granulysin-dependent killing of

University of Cape Town

intracellular and extracellular Mycobacterium tuberculosis by Vgamma9/Vdelta2 T lymphocytes. J Infect Dis **184**:1082-5.

131. Dlugovitzky D, Bay ML, Rateni L, Fiorenza G, Vietti L, Farroni MA and Bottasso OA, **2000**. Influence of disease severity on nitrite and cytokine production by peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) from patients with pulmonary tuberculosis (TB). Clin Exp Immunol **122**:343-9.

132. Dlugovitzky D, Torres-Morales A, Rateni L, Farroni MA, Largacha C, Molteni O and Bottasso O, **1997**. Circulating profile of Th1 and Th2 cytokines in tuberculosis patients with different degrees of pulmonary involvement. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol **18**:203-7.

133. Douvas GS, Looker DL, Vatter AE and Crowle AJ, **1985**. Gamma interferon activates human macrophages to become tumoricidal and leishmanicidal but enhances replication of macrophage-associated mycobacteria. Infect Immun **50**:1-8.

134. Draper P, **2000**. Lipid biochemistry takes a stand against tuberculosis. Nat Med **6**:977-8.

135. Drlica K, Xu C, Wang JY, Burger RM and Malik M, **1996**. Fluoroquinolone action in mycobacteria: similarity with effects in Escherichia coli and detection by cell lysate viscosity. Antimicrob Agents Chemother **40**:1594-9.

136. D'Souza CD, Cooper AM, Frank AA, Mazzaccaro RJ, Bloom BR and Orme IM, **1997**. An anti-inflammatory role for gamma delta T lymphocytes in acquired immunity to Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Immunol **158**:1217-21.

137. Dubnau E, Chan J, Raynaud C, Mohan VP, Laneelle MA, Yu K, Quemard A, Smith I and Daffe M, **2000**. Oxygenated mycolic acids are necessary for virulence of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in mice. Mol Microbiol **36**:630-7.

138. Dubnau E, Fontan P, Manganelli R, Soares-Appel S and Smith I, **2002**. Mycobacterium tuberculosis genes induced during infection of human macrophages. Infect Immun **70**:2787-95.

139. Dye C, Scheele S, Dolin P, Pathania V and Raviglione MC, **1999**. Consensus statement. Global burden of tuberculosis: estimated incidence, prevalence, and mortality by country. WHO Global Surveillance and Monitoring Project. Jama **282**:677-86.

140. Ehrt S, Schnappinger D, Bekiranov S, Drenkow J, Shi S, Gingeras TR, Gaasterland T, Schoolnik G and Nathan C, **2001**. Reprogramming of the macrophage transcriptome in response to interferon- gamma and Mycobacterium tuberculosis: signaling roles of nitric oxide synthase-2 and phagocyte oxidase. J Exp Med **194**:1123-40.

141. Elhay MJ, Oettinger T and Andersen P, **1998**. Delayed-type hypersensitivity responses to ESAT-6 and MPT64 from Mycobacterium tuberculosis in the guinea pig. Infect Immun **66**:3454-6.

University of Cape Town

142. Enarson DA, Beyers N and Zhang LX, **2001**. The tuberculosis pandemic today: routes of transmission and new target groups. Scand J Infect Dis **33**:9-12.

143. Engele M, Stobetael E, Castiglione K, Schwerdtner N, Wagner M, Bolcskei P, Rollinghoff M and Stenger S, **2002**. Induction of TNF in Human Alveolar Macrophages As a Potential Evasion Mechanism of Virulent Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Immunol **168**:1328-37.

144. Erb KJ, Kirman J, Woodfield L, Wilson T, Collins DM, Watson JD and LeGros G, **1998**. Identification of potential CD8+ T-cell epitopes of the 19 kDa and AhpC proteins from Mycobacterium tuberculosis. No evidence for CD8+ T-cell priming against the identified peptides after DNA-vaccination of mice. Vaccine **16**:692-7.

145. Erickson SL, de Sauvage FJ, Kikly K, Carver-Moore K, Pitts-Meek S, Gillett N, Sheehan KC, Schreiber RD, Goeddel DV and Moore MW, **1994**. Decreased sensitivity to tumour-necrosis factor but normal T-cell development in TNF receptor-2-deficient mice. Nature **372**:560-3.

146. Ernst JD, **1998**. Macrophage receptors for Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Infect Immun **66**:1277-81.

147. Escalante P, Ramaswamy S, Sanabria H, Soini H, Pan X, Valiente-Castillo O and Musser JM, **1998**. Genotypic characterization of drug-resistant Mycobacterium tuberculosis isolates from Peru. Tuber Lung Dis **79**:111-8.

148. Espinal MA, Kim SJ, Suarez PG, Kam KM, Khomenko AG, Migliori GB, Baez J, Kochi A, Dye C and Raviglione MC, **2000**. Standard short-course chemotherapy for drug-resistant tuberculosis: treatment outcomes in 6 countries. JAMA **283**:2537-45.

149. Espinal MA, Laszlo A, Simonsen L, Boulahbal F, Kim SJ, Reniero A, Hoffner S, Rieder HL, Binkin N, Dye C, Williams R and Raviglione MC, **2001**. Global trends in resistance to antituberculosis drugs. World Health Organization-International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease Working Group on Anti-Tuberculosis Drug Resistance Surveillance. N Engl J Med **344**:1294-303.

150. Falcone V, Bassey EB, Toniolo A, Conaldi PG and Collins FM, **1994**. Differential release of tumor necrosis factor-alpha from murine peritoneal macrophages stimulated with virulent and avirulent species of mycobacteria. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol **8**:225-32.

151. Farmer P, Bayona J, Becerra M, Furin J, Henry C, Hiatt H, Kim JY, Mitnick C, Nardell E and Shin S, **1998**. The dilemma of MDR-TB in the global era. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis **2**:869-76.

152. Faure E, Equils O, Sieling PA, Thomas L, Zhang FX, Kirschning CJ, Polentarutti N, Muzio M and Arditi M, **2000**. Bacterial lipopolysaccharide activates NF-kappaB through toll-like receptor 4 (TLR-4) in cultured human dermal endothelial cells. Differential expression of TLR-4 and TLR-2 in endothelial cells. J Biol Chem **275**:11058-63.

University of Cape Town

153. Feng CG, Bean AG, Hooi H, Briscoe H and Britton WJ, **1999**. Increase in gamma interferon-secreting CD8(+), as well as CD4(+), T cells in lungs following aerosol infection with Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Infect Immun **67**:3242-7.

154. Fenhalls G, Stevens L, Bezuidenhout J, Amphlett GE, Duncan K, Bardin P and Lukey PT, **2002**. Distribution of IFN-gamma, IL-4 and TNF-alpha protein and CD8 T cells producing IL-12p40 mRNA in human lung tuberculous granulomas. Immunology **105**:325-35.

155. Fenhalls G, Stevens L, Moses L, Bezuidenhout J, Betts JC, Helden Pv P, Lukey PT and Duncan K, **2002**. In situ detection of Mycobacterium tuberculosis transcripts in human lung granulomas reveals differential gene expression in necrotic lesions. Infect Immun **70**:6330-8.

156. Fenhalls G, Wong A, Bezuidenhout J, van Helden P, Bardin P and Lukey PT, **2000**. In situ production of gamma interferon, interleukin-4, and tumor necrosis factor alpha mRNA in human lung tuberculous granulomas. Infect Immun **68**:2827-36.

157. Ferebee SH, **1970**. Controlled chemoprophylaxis trials in tuberculosis. A general review. Bibl Tuberc **26**:28-106.

158. Ferebee SH and Palmer CE, **1965**. The epidemiological bonus. Am Rev Tuberc **91**:104-107.

159. Ferrari G, Langen H, Naito M and Pieters J, **1999**. A coat protein on phagosomes involved in the intracellular survival of mycobacteria. Cell **97**:435-47.

160. Ferrero E, Biswas P, Vettoretto K, Ferrarini M, Uguccioni M, Piali L, Leone BE, Moser B, Rugarli C and Pardi R, **2003**. Macrophages exposed to Mycobacterium tuberculosis release chemokines able to recruit selected leucocyte subpopulations: focus on gammadelta cells. Immunology **108**:365-374.

161. Fieschi C, Dupuis S, Catherinot E, Feinberg J, Bustamante J, Breiman A, Altare F, Baretto R, Le Deist F, Kayal S, Koch H, Richter D, Brezina M, Aksu G, Wood P, Al-Jumaah S, Raspall M, Da Silva Duarte AJ, Tuerlinckx D, Virelizier JL, Fischer A, Enright A, Bernhoft J, Cleary AM, Vermylen C, Rodriguez-Gallego C, Davies G, Blutters-Sawatzki R, Siegrist CA, Ehlayel MS, Novelli V, Haas WH, Levy J, Freihorst J, Al-Hajjar S, Nadal D, De Moraes Vasconcelos D, Jeppsson O, Kutukculer N, Frecerova K, Caragol I, Lammas D, Kumararatne DS, Abel L and Casanova JL, **2003**. Low penetrance, broad resistance, and favorable outcome of interleukin 12 receptor beta1 deficiency: medical and immunological implications. J Exp Med **197**:527-35.

162. Fifis T, Costopoulos C, Radford AJ, Bacic A and Wood PR, **1991**. Purification and characterization of major antigens from a Mycobacterium bovis culture filtrate. Infect Immun **59**:800-7.

163. Fine PE, **2001**. BCG: the challenge continues. Scand J Infect Dis **33**:243-5.

University of Cape Town

164. Finken M, Kirschner P, Meier A, Wrede A and Bottger EC, **1993**. Molecular basis of streptomycin resistance in Mycobacterium tuberculosis: alterations of the ribosomal protein S12 gene and point mutations within a functional 16S ribosomal RNA pseudoknot. Mol Microbiol **9**:1239-46.

165. Fitzgerald DW, Desvarieux M, Severe P, Joseph P, Johnson WD, Jr. and Pape JW, **2000**. Effect of post-treatment isoniazid on prevention of recurrent tuberculosis in HIV-1-infected individuals: a randomised trial. Lancet **356**:1470-4.

166. Flesch I and Kaufmann SH, **1987**. Mycobacterial growth inhibition by interferon-gamma-activated bone marrow macrophages and differential susceptibility among strains of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Immunol **138**:4408-13.

167. Flesch IE, Hess JH, Oswald IP and Kaufmann SH, **1994**. Growth inhibition of Mycobacterium bovis by IFN-gamma stimulated macrophages: regulation by endogenous tumor necrosis factor-alpha and by IL-10. Int Immunol **6**:693-700.

168. Flesch IE and Kaufmann SH, **1990**. Stimulation of antibacterial macrophage activities by B-cell stimulatory factor 2 (interleukin-6). Infect Immun **58**:269-71.

169. Flynn JL and Chan J, **2001**. Immunology of tuberculosis. Annu Rev Immunol **19**:93-129.

170. Flynn JL, Chan J, Triebold KJ, Dalton DK, Stewart TA and Bloom BR, **1993**. An essential role for interferon gamma in resistance to Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection. J Exp Med **178**:2249-54.

171. Flynn JL, Goldstein MM, Chan J, Triebold KJ, Pfeffer K, Lowenstein CJ, Schreiber R, Mak TW and Bloom BR, **1995**. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha is required in the protective immune response against Mycobacterium tuberculosis in mice. Immunity **2**:561-72.

172. Flynn JL, Goldstein MM, Triebold KJ, Sypek J, Wolf S and Bloom BR, **1995**. IL-12 increases resistance of BALB/c mice to Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection. J Immunol **155**:2515-24.

173. Fonseca DP, Joosten D, Snippe H and Verheul AF, **2000**. Evaluation of T-cell responses to peptides and lipopeptides with MHC class I binding motifs derived from the amino acid sequence of the 19- kDa lipoprotein of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Mol Immunol **37**:413-22.

174. Fratti RA, Chua J, Vergne I and Deretic V, **2003**. Mycobacterium tuberculosis glycosylated phosphatidylinositol causes phagosome maturation arrest. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **100**:5437-42.

175. Freidag BL, Melton GB, Collins F, Klinman DM, Cheever A, Stobie L, Suen W and Seder RA, **2000**. CpG oligodeoxynucleotides and interleukin-12 improve the efficacy of Mycobacterium bovis BCG vaccination in mice challenged with M. tuberculosis. Infect Immun **68**:2948-53.

University of Cape Town

176. Frieden TR, Sherman LF, Maw KL, Fujiwara PI, Crawford JT, Nivin B, Sharp V, Hewlett D, Jr., Brudney K, Alland D and Kreisworth BN, **1996**. A multi-institutional outbreak of highly drug-resistant tuberculosis: epidemiology and clinical outcomes. JAMA **276**:1229-35.

177. Frucht DM and Holland SM, **1996**. Defective monocyte costimulation for IFN-gamma production in familial disseminated Mycobacterium avium complex infection: abnormal IL-12 regulation. J Immunol **157**:411-6.

178. Fulton SA, Cross JV, Toossi ZT and Boom WH, **1998**. Regulation of interleukin-12 by interleukin-10, transforming growth factor-beta, tumor necrosis factor-alpha, and interferon-gamma in human monocytes infected with Mycobacterium tuberculosis H37Ra. J Infect Dis **178**:1105-14.

179. Furney SK, Skinner PS, Roberts AD, Appelberg R and Orme IM, **1992**. Capacity of Mycobacterium avium isolates to grow well or poorly in murine macrophages resides in their ability to induce secretion of tumor necrosis factor. Infect Immun **60**:4410-3.

180. Garbe T, Harris D, Vordermeier M, Lathigra R, Ivanyi J and Young D, **1993**. Expression of the Mycobacterium tuberculosis 19-kilodalton antigen in Mycobacterium smegmatis: immunological analysis and evidence of glycosylation. Infect Immun **61**:260-7.

181. Garbe TR, Barathi J, Barnini S, Zhang Y, Abou-Zeid C, Tang D, Mukherjee R and Young DB, **1994**. Transformation of mycobacterial species using hygromycin resistance as selectable marker. Microbiology **140**:133-8.

182. Garbe TR, Hibler NS and Deretic V, **1999**. Response to reactive nitrogen intermediates in Mycobacterium tuberculosis: induction of the 16-kilodalton alpha-crystallin homolog by exposure to nitric oxide donors. Infect Immun **67**:460-5.

183. Geijtenbeek TB, Van Vliet SJ, Koppel EA, Sanchez-Hernandez M, Vandenbroucke-Grauls CM, Appelmelk B and Van Kooyk Y, **2003**. Mycobacteria Target DC-SIGN to Suppress Dendritic Cell Function. J Exp Med **197**:7-17.

184. Geng E, Kreiswirth B, Driver C, Li J, Burzynski J, DellaLatta P, LaPaz A and Schluger NW, **2002**. Changes in the transmission of tuberculosis in New York City from 1990 to 1999. N Engl J Med **346**:1453-8.

185. Gerosa F, Nisii C, Righetti S, Micciolo R, Marchesini M, Cazzadori A and Trinchieri G, **1999**. CD4(+) T cell clones producing both interferon-gamma and interleukin-10 predominate in bronchoalveolar lavages of active pulmonary tuberculosis patients. Clin Immunol **92**:224-34.

186. Girardi E, Raviglione MC, Antonucci G, Godfrey-Faussett P and Ippolito G, **2000**. Impact of the HIV epidemic on the spread of other diseases: the case of tuberculosis. AIDS **14**:S47-56.

187. Giuliani A, Prete SP, Graziani G, Aquino A, Balduzzi A, Sugita M, Brenner MB, Iona E, Fattorini L, Orefici G, Porcelli SA and Bonmassar E, **2001**. Influence of

University of Cape Town

Mycobacterium bovis bacillus Calmette Guerin on in vitro induction of CD1 molecules in human adherent mononuclear cells. Infect Immun **69**:7461-70.

188. Glickman MS, Cox JS and Jacobs WR, Jr., **2000**. A novel mycolic acid cyclopropane synthetase is required for cording, persistence, and virulence of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Mol Cell **5**:717-27.

189. Glickman MS and Jacobs WR, Jr., **2001**. Microbial pathogenesis of Mycobacterium tuberculosis: dawn of a discipline. Cell **104**:477-85.

190. Goble M, Iseman MD, Madsen LA, Waite D, Ackerson L and Horsburgh CR, Jr., **1993**. Treatment of 171 patients with pulmonary tuberculosis resistant to isoniazid and rifampin. N Engl J Med **328**:527-32.

191. Goldfeld AE, Delgado JC, Thim S, Bozon MV, Uglialoro AM, Turbay D, Cohen C and Yunis EJ, **1998**. Association of an HLA-DQ allele with clinical tuberculosis. Jama **279**:226-8.

192. Gomes MS, Florido M, Pais TF and Appelberg R, **1999**. Improved clearance of Mycobacterium avium upon disruption of the inducible nitric oxide synthase gene. J Immunol **162**:6734-9.

193. Gong J, Stenger S, Zack JA, Jones BE, Bristol GC, Modlin RL, Morrissey PJ and Barnes PF, **1998**. Isolation of mycobacterium-reactive CD1-restricted T cells from patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. J Clin Invest **101**:383-9.

194. Gong JH, Zhang M, Modlin RL, Linsley PS, Iyer D, Lin Y and Barnes PF, **1996**. Interleukin-10 downregulates Mycobacterium tuberculosis-induced Th1 responses and CTLA-4 expression. Infect Immun **64**:913-8.

195. Graham JE and Clark-Curtiss JE, **1999**. Identification of Mycobacterium tuberculosis RNAs synthesized in response to phagocytosis by human macrophages by selective capture of transcribed sequences (SCOTS). Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **96**:11554-9.

196. Greinert U, Ernst M, Schlaak M and Entzian P, **2001**. Interleukin-12 as successful adjuvant in tuberculosis treatment. Eur Respir J **17**:1049-51.

197. Griffin JP, Harshan KV, Born WK and Orme IM, **1991**. Kinetics of accumulation of gamma delta receptor-bearing T lymphocytes in mice infected with live mycobacteria. Infect Immun **59**:4263-5.

198. Guleria I, Teitelbaum R, McAdam RA, Kalpana G, Jacobs WR, Jr. and Bloom BR, **1996**. Auxotrophic vaccines for tuberculosis. Nat Med **2**:334-7.

199. Harris DP, Vordermeier HM, Friscia G, Roman E, Surcel HM, Pasvol G, Moreno C and Ivanyi J, **1993**. Genetically permissive recognition of adjacent epitopes from the 19-kDa antigen of Mycobacterium tuberculosis by human and murine T cells. J Immunol **150**:5041-50.

University of Cape Town

200. Harris DP, Vordermeier HM, Roman E, Lathigra R, Brett SJ, Moreno C and Ivanyi J, **1991**. Murine T cell-stimulatory peptides from the 19-kDa antigen of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Epitope-restricted homology with the 28-kDa protein of Mycobacterium leprae. J Immunol **147**:2706-12.

201. Henderson RA, Watkins SC and Flynn JL, **1997**. Activation of human dendritic cells following infection with Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Immunol **159**:635-43.

202. Hernandez-Pando R, Jeyanathan M, Mengistu G, Aguilar D, Orozco H, Harboe M, Rook GA and Bjune G, **2000**. Persistence of DNA from Mycobacterium tuberculosis in superficially normal lung tissue during latent infection. Lancet **356**:2133-8.

203. Herrmann JL, O'Gaora P, Gallagher A, Thole JE and Young DB, **1996**. Bacterial glycoproteins: a link between glycosylation and proteolytic cleavage of a 19 kDa antigen from Mycobacterium tuberculosis. EMBO J **15**:3547-54.

204. Hertz C, Kiertscher S, Godowski P, Bouis D, Norgard M, Roth M and Modlin R, **2001**. Microbial lipopeptides stimulate dendritic cell maturation via Toll- like receptor 2. J Immunol **166**:2444-50.

205. Hewlett D, Jr., Horn DL and Alfalla C, **1995**. Drug-resistant tuberculosis: inconsistent results of pyrazinamide susceptibility testing. JAMA **273**:916-7.

206. Hirsch CS, Ellner JJ, Russell DG and Rich EA, **1994**. Complement receptor-mediated uptake and tumor necrosis factor-alpha-mediated growth inhibition of Mycobacterium tuberculosis by human alveolar macrophages. J Immunol **152**:743-53.

207. Hirsch CS, Toossi Z, Othieno C, Johnson JL, Schwander SK, Robertson S, Wallis RS, Edmonds K, Okwera A, Mugerwa R, Peters P and Ellner JJ, **1999**. Depressed T-cell interferon-gamma responses in pulmonary tuberculosis: analysis of underlying mechanisms and modulation with therapy. J Infect Dis **180**:2069-73.

208. Hobby GL, Auerbach O, Lenert TF, Small MJ and Comer JV, **1954**. The late emergence of M. tuberculosis in liquid cultures of pulmonary lesions resected from humans. Am Rev Tuberc **70**:191-218.

209. Hoheisel G, Izbicki G, Roth M, Chan CH, Leung JC, Reichenberger F, Schauer J and Perruchoud AP, **1998**. Compartmentalization of pro-inflammatory cytokines in tuberculous pleurisy. Respir Med **92**:14-7.

210. Honer Zu Bentrup K, Miczak A, Swenson DL and Russell DG, **1999**. Characterization of activity and expression of isocitrate lyase in Mycobacterium avium and Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Bacteriol **181**:7161-7.

211. Horwitz MA, Harth G, Dillon BJ and Maslesa-Galic S, **2000**. Recombinant bacillus calmette-guerin (BCG) vaccines expressing the Mycobacterium tuberculosis 30-kDa major secretory protein induce greater protective immunity against tuberculosis than conventional BCG vaccines in a highly susceptible animal model. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **97**:13853-8.

University of Cape Town

212. Hsieh CS, Macatonia SE, Tripp CS, Wolf SF, O'Garra A and Murphy KM, **1993**. Development of TH1 CD4+ T cells through IL-12 produced by Listeria- induced macrophages. Science **260**:547-9.

213. Huygen K, Content J, Denis O, Montgomery DL, Yawman AM, Deck RR, DeWitt CM, Orme IM, Baldwin S, D'Souza C, Drowart A, Lozes E, Vandenbussche P, Van Vooren JP, Liu MA and Ulmer JB, **1996**. Immunogenicity and protective efficacy of a tuberculosis DNA vaccine. Nat Med **2**:893-8.

214. Iseman MD, **1993**. Treatment of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. N Engl J Med **329**:784-791.

215. Jackett PS, Bothamley GH, Batra HV, Mistry A, Young DB and Ivanyi J, **1988**. Specificity of antibodies to immunodominant mycobacterial antigens in pulmonary tuberculosis. J Clin Microbiol **26**:2313-8.

216. Jackson M, Phalen SW, Lagranderie M, Ensergueix D, Chavarot P, Marchal G, McMurray DN, Gicquel B and Guilhot C, **1999**. Persistence and protective efficacy of a Mycobacterium tuberculosis auxotroph vaccine. Infect Immun **67**:2867-73.

217. Jasmer RM, Nahid P and Hopewell PC, **2002**. Clinical practice. Latent tuberculosis infection. N Engl J Med **347**:1860-6.

218. Jindani A, Aber VR, Edwards EA and Mitchison DA, **1980**. The early bactericidal activity of drugs in patients with pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis **121**:939-49.

219. Johnson JL, Kamya RM, Okwera A, Loughlin AM, Nyole S, Hom DL, Wallis RS, Hirsch CS, Wolski K, Foulds J, Mugerwa RD and Ellner JJ, **2000**. Randomized controlled trial of Mycobacterium vaccae immunotherapy in non-human immunodeficiency virus-infected ugandan adults with newly diagnosed pulmonary tuberculosis. The Uganda-Case Western Reserve University Research Collaboration. J Infect Dis **181**:1304-12.

220. Jouanguy E, Altare F, Lamhamedi S, Revy P, Emile JF, Newport M, Levin M, Blanche S, Seboun E, Fischer A and Casanova JL, **1996**. Interferon-gamma-receptor deficiency in an infant with fatal bacille Calmette-Guerin infection. N Engl J Med **335**:1956-61.

221. Juffermans NP, Florquin S, Camoglio L, Verbon A, Kolk AH, Speelman P, van Deventer SJ and van Der Poll T, **2000**. Interleukin-1 signaling is essential for host defense during murine pulmonary tuberculosis. J Infect Dis **182**:902-8.

222. Jung YJ, LaCourse R, Ryan L and North RJ, **2002**. Virulent but not avirulent Mycobacterium tuberculosis can evade the growth inhibitory action of a T helper 1-dependent, nitric oxide Synthase 2-independent defense in mice. J Exp Med **196**:991-8.

University of Cape Town

223. Kadowaki N, Ho S, Antonenko S, Malefyt RW, Kastelein RA, Bazan F and Liu YJ, **2001**. Subsets of human dendritic cell precursors express different toll-like receptors and respond to different microbial antigens. J Exp Med **194**:863-9.

224. Kagi D, Vignaux F, Ledermann B, Burki K, Depraetere V, Nagata S, Hengartner H and Golstein P, **1994**. Fas and perforin pathways as major mechanisms of T cell-mediated cytotoxicity. Science **265**:528-30.

225. Kalb A, Bluethmann H, Moore MW and Lesslauer W, **1996**. Tumor necrosis factor receptors (Tnfr) in mouse fibroblasts deficient in Tnfr1 or Tnfr2 are signaling competent and activate the mitogen- activated protein kinase pathway with differential kinetics. J Biol Chem **271**:28097-104.

226. Kaplan G and Freedman VH, **1996**. The role of cytokines in the immune response to tuberculosis. Res Immunol **147**:565-72.

227. Kassim S, Sassan-Morokro M, Ackah A, Abouya LY, Digbeu H, Yesso G, Coulibaly IM, Coulibaly D, Whitaker PJ, Doorly R and et al., **1995**. Two-year follow-up of persons with HIV-1- and HIV-2-associated pulmonary tuberculosis treated with short-course chemotherapy in West Africa. AIDS **9**:1185-91.

228. Kaushal D, Schroeder BG, Tyagi S, Yoshimatsu T, Scott C, Ko C, Carpenter L, Mehrotra J, Manabe YC, Fleischmann RD and Bishai WR, **2002**. Reduced immunopathology and mortality despite tissue persistence in a Mycobacterium tuberculosis mutant lacking alternative sigma factor, SigH. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **99**:8330-5.

229. Keane J, Balcewicz-Sablinska MK, Remold HG, Chupp GL, Meek BB, Fenton MJ and Kornfeld H, **1997**. Infection by Mycobacterium tuberculosis promotes human alveolar macrophage apoptosis. Infect Immun **65**:298-304.

230. Keane J, Gershon S, Wise RP, Mirabile-Levens E, Kasznica J, Schwieterman WD, Siegel JN and Braun MM, **2001**. Tuberculosis associated with infliximab, a tumor necrosis factor alpha- neutralizing agent. N Engl J Med **345**:1098-104.

231. Keane J, Remold HG and Kornfeld H, **2000**. Virulent Mycobacterium tuberculosis strains evade apoptosis of infected alveolar macrophages. J Immunol **164**:2016-20.

232. Knutson KL, Hmama Z, Herrera-Velit P, Rochford R and Reiner NE, **1998**. Lipoarabinomannan of Mycobacterium tuberculosis promotes protein tyrosine dephosphorylation and inhibition of mitogen-activated protein kinase in human mononuclear phagocytes. Role of the Src homology 2 containing tyrosine phosphatase 1. J Biol Chem **273**:645-52.

233. Kruuner A, Pehme L, Ghebremichael S, Koivula T, Hoffner SE and Mikelsaar M, **2002**. Use of molecular techniques to distinguish between treatment failure and exogenous reinfection with Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Clin Infect Dis **35**:146-55.

University of Cape Town

234. Kurashima K, Mukaida N, Fujimura M, Yasui M, Nakazumi Y, Matsuda T and Matsushima K, **1997**. Elevated chemokine levels in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid of tuberculosis patients. Am J Respir Crit Care Med **155**:1474-7.

235. Kurepina NE, Sreevatsan S, Plikaytis BB, Bifani PJ, Connell ND, Donnelly RJ, van Sooligen D, Musser JM and Kreiswirth BN, **1998**. Characterization of the phylogenetic distribution and chromosomal insertion sites of five IS6110 elements in Mycobacterium tuberculosis: non-random integration in the dnaA-dnaN region. Tuber Lung Dis **79**:31-42.

236. Ladel CH, Blum C, Dreher A, Reifenberg K, Kopf M and Kaufmann SH, **1997**. Lethal tuberculosis in interleukin-6-deficient mutant mice. Infect Immun **65**:4843-9.

237. Lalvani A, Brookes R, Wilkinson RJ, Malin AS, Pathan AA, Andersen P, Dockrell H, Pasvol G and Hill AV, **1998**. Human cytolytic and interferon gamma-secreting CD8+ T lymphocytes specific for Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **95**:270-5.

238. Laochumroonvorapong P, Paul S, Manca C, Freedman VH and Kaplan G, **1997**. Mycobacterial growth and sensitivity to H_2O_2 killing in human monocytes in vitro. Infect Immun **65**:4850-7.

239. Laochumroonvorapong P, Wang J, Liu CC, Ye W, Moreira AL, Elkon KB, Freedman VH and Kaplan G, **1997**. Perforin, a cytotoxic molecule which mediates cell necrosis, is not required for the early control of mycobacterial infection in mice. Infect Immun **65**:127-32.

240. Larsen MH, Vilcheze C, Kremer L, Besra GS, Parsons L, Salfinger M, Heifets L, Hazbon MH, Alland D, Sacchettini JC and Jacobs WR, Jr., **2002**. Overexpression of inhA, but not kasA, confers resistance to isoniazid and ethionamide in Mycobacterium smegmatis, M. bovis BCG and M. tuberculosis. Mol Microbiol **46**:453-66.

241. Laszlo A, Rahman M, Espinal M and Raviglione M, **2002**. Quality assurance programme for drug susceptibility testing of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in the WHO/IUATLD Supranational Reference Laboratory Network: five rounds of proficiency testing, 1994-1998. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis **6**:748-56.

242. Lathigra R, Zhang Y, Hill M, Garcia MJ, Jackett PS and Ivanyi J, **1996**. Lack of production of the 19-kDa glycolipoprotein in certain strains of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Res Microbiol **147**:237-49.

243. Law K, Weiden M, Harkin T, Tchou-Wong K, Chi C and Rom WN, **1996**. Increased release of interleukin-1 beta, interleukin-6, and tumor necrosis factor-alpha by bronchoalveolar cells lavaged from involved sites in pulmonary tuberculosis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med **153**:799-804.

244. Leal IS, Smedegard B, Andersen P and Appelberg R, **1999**. Interleukin-6 and interleukin-12 participate in induction of a type 1 protective T-cell response during vaccination with a tuberculosis subunit vaccine. Infect Immun **67**:5747-54.

University of Cape Town

245. Lee AS, Teo AS and Wong SY, **2001**. Novel mutations in ndh in isoniazid-resistant Mycobacterium tuberculosis isolates. Antimicrob Agents Chemother **45**:2157-9.

246. Lewinsohn DM, Alderson MR, Briden AL, Riddell SR, Reed SG and Grabstein KH, **1998**. Characterization of human CD8+ T cells reactive with Mycobacterium tuberculosis-infected antigen-presenting cells. J Exp Med **187**:1633-40.

247. Lewinsohn DM, Bement TT, Xu J, Lynch DH, Grabstein KH, Reed SG and Alderson MR, **1998**. Human purified protein derivative-specific CD4+ T cells use both CD95-dependent and CD95-independent cytolytic mechanisms. J Immunol **160**:2374-9.

248. Li Q, Whalen CC, Albert JM, Larkin R, Zukowski L, Cave MD and Silver RF, **2002**. Differences in rate and variability of intracellular growth of a panel of Mycobacterium tuberculosis clinical isolates within a human monocyte model. Infect Immun **70**:6489-93.

249. Lillebaek T, Dirksen A, Baess I, Strunge B, Thomsen VO and Andersen AB, **2002**. Molecular evidence of endogenous reactivation of Mycobacterium tuberculosis after 33 years of latent infection. J Infect Dis **185**:401-4.

250. Lin Y, Gong J, Zhang M, Xue W and Barnes PF, **1998**. Production of monocyte chemoattractant protein 1 in tuberculosis patients. Infect Immun **66**:2319-22.

251. Lopez B, Aguilar D, Orozco H, Burger M, Espitia C, Ritacco V, Barrera L, Kremer K, Hernandez-Pando R, Huygen K and van Sooligen D, **2003**. A marked difference in pathogenesis and immune response induced by different *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* genotypes. Clin Exp Immunol **133**:30-37.

252. Lopez M, Sly LM, Luu Y, Young D, Cooper H and Reiner NE, **2003**. The 19-kDa Mycobacterium tuberculosis protein induces macrophage apoptosis through Toll-like receptor-2. J Immunol **170**:2409-16.

253. Lorgat F, Keraan MM, Lukey PT and Ress SR, **1992**. Evidence for in vivo generation of cytotoxic T cells. PPD-stimulated lymphocytes from tuberculous pleural effusions demonstrate enhanced cytotoxicity with accelerated kinetics of induction. Am Rev Respir Dis **145**:418-23.

254. Lowrie DB, Tascon RE, Bonato VL, Lima VM, Faccioli LH, Stavropoulos E, Colston MJ, Hewinson RG, Moelling K and Silva CL, **1999**. Therapy of tuberculosis in mice by DNA vaccination. Nature **400**:269-71.

255. Lu B, Rutledge BJ, Gu L, Fiorillo J, Lukacs NW, Kunkel SL, North R, Gerard C and Rollins BJ, **1998**. Abnormalities in monocyte recruitment and cytokine expression in monocyte chemoattractant protein 1-deficient mice. J Exp Med **187**:601-8.

256. MacMicking JD, North RJ, LaCourse R, Mudgett JS, Shah SK and Nathan CF, **1997**. Identification of nitric oxide synthase as a protective locus against tuberculosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **94**:5243-8.

University of Cape Town

257. Manabe YC, Saviola BJ, Sun L, Murphy JR and Bishai WR, **1999**. Attenuation of virulence in Mycobacterium tuberculosis expressing a constitutively active iron repressor. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **96**:12844-8.

258. Manca C, Tsenova L, Barry CE, 3rd, Bergtold A, Freeman S, Haslett PA, Musser JM, Freedman VH and Kaplan G, **1999**. Mycobacterium tuberculosis CDC1551 induces a more vigorous host response in vivo and in vitro, but is not more virulent than other clinical isolates. J Immunol **162**:6740-6.

259. Manca C, Tsenova L, Bergtold A, Freeman S, Tovey M, Musser JM, Barry CE, 3rd, Freedman VH and Kaplan G, **2001**. Virulence of a Mycobacterium tuberculosis clinical isolate in mice is determined by failure to induce Th1 type immunity and is associated with induction of IFN-alpha /beta. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **98**:5752-7.

260. Manetti R, Parronchi P, Giudizi MG, Piccinni MP, Maggi E, Trinchieri G and Romagnani S, **1993**. Natural killer cell stimulatory factor (interleukin 12 [IL-12]) induces T helper type 1 (Th1)-specific immune responses and inhibits the development of IL-4-producing Th cells. J Exp Med **177**:1199-204.

261. Marchant A, Goetghebuer T, Ota MO, Wolfe I, Ceesay SJ, De Groote D, Corrah T, Bennett S, Wheeler J, Huygen K, Aaby P, McAdam KP and Newport MJ, **1999**. Newborns develop a Th1-type immune response to Mycobacterium bovis bacillus Calmette-Guerin vaccination. J Immunol **163**:2249-55.

262. Mathema B, Bifani PJ, Driscoll J, Steinlein L, Kurepina N, Moghazeh SL, Shashkina E, Marras SA, Campbell S, Mangura B, Shilkret K, Crawford JT, Frothingham R and Kreiswirth BN, **2002**. Identification and evolution of an IS6110 low-copy-number Mycobacterium tuberculosis cluster. J Infect Dis **185**:641-9.

263. Matutes E, Coelho E, Aguado MJ, Morilla R, Crawford A, Owusu-Ankomah K and Catovsky D, **1996**. Expression of TIA-1 and TIA-2 in T cell malignancies and T cell lymphocytosis. J Clin Pathol **49**:154-8.

264. McCune RM, Feldmann FM, Lambert HP and McDermott W, **1966**. Microbial persistence. I. The capacity of tubercle bacilli to survive sterilization in mouse tissues. J Exp Med **123**:445-68.

265. McCune RM, Tompsett R and McDermott W, **1956**. The fate of mycobacterium tuberculosis in mouse as determined by the microbial enumeration technique. J Exp Med **104**:737-802.

266. McKinney JD, Honer zu Bentrup K, Munoz-Elias EJ, Miczak A, Chen B, Chan WT, Swenson D, Sacchettini JC, Jacobs WR, Jr. and Russell DG, **2000**. Persistence of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in macrophages and mice requires the glyoxylate shunt enzyme isocitrate lyase. Nature **406**:735-8.

267. Mdluli K, Slayden RA, Zhu Y, Ramaswamy S, Pan X, Mead D, Crane DD, Musser JM and Barry CE, 3rd, **1998**. Inhibition of a Mycobacterium tuberculosis beta-ketoacyl ACP synthase by isoniazid. Science **280**:1607-10.

University of Cape Town

268. Means TK, Jones BW, Schromm AB, Shurtleff BA, Smith JA, Keane J, Golenbock DT, Vogel SN and Fenton MJ, **2001**. Differential effects of a Toll-like receptor antagonist on Mycobacterium tuberculosis-induced macrophage responses. J Immunol **166**:4074-82.

269. Means TK, Lien E, Yoshimura A, Wang S, Golenbock DT and Fenton MJ, **1999**. The CD14 ligands lipoarabinomannan and lipopolysaccharide differ in their requirement for Toll-like receptors. J Immunol **163**:6748-55.

270. Means TK, Wang S, Lien E, Yoshimura A, Golenbock DT and Fenton MJ, **1999**. Human toll-like receptors mediate cellular activation by Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Immunol **163**:3920-7.

271. Medical Officer of Health, City of Cape Town, Annual Report 1994/1995.

272. Medlar EM, **1955**. Necropsy studies of human pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Tuberc **71 (II)**:29-55.

273. Medlar EM, **1955**. Preliminary discussion of resected specimens. Am Rev Tuberc **71 (II)**:56-77.

274. Medlar EM, Bernstein S and Steward DM, **1952**. A bacteriologic study of resected tuberculous lesions. Am Rev Tuberc **66**:36-43.

275. Medley QG, Kedersha N, O'Brien S, Tian Q, Schlossman SF, Streuli M and Anderson P, **1996**. Characterization of GMP-17, a granule membrane protein that moves to the plasma membrane of natural killer cells following target cell recognition. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **93**:685-9.

276. Medzhitov R, Preston-Hurlburt P and Janeway CA, Jr., **1997**. A human homologue of the Drosophila Toll protein signals activation of adaptive immunity. Nature **388**:394-7.

277. Meehan SM, McCluskey RT, Pascual M, Preffer FI, Anderson P, Schlossman SF and Colvin RB, **1997**. Cytotoxicity and apoptosis in human renal allografts: identification, distribution, and quantitation of cells with a cytotoxic granule protein GMP-17 (TIA-1) and cells with fragmented nuclear DNA. Lab Invest **76**:639-49.

278. Middlebrook G, Dubos RJ and Pierce C, **1947**. Virulence and morphological characteristics of mammalian tubercle bacilli. J Exp Med **86**:175-184.

279. Mitchison DA and Nunn AJ, **1986**. Influence of initial drug resistance on the response to short-course chemotherapy of pulmonary tuberculosis. Am Rev Respir Dis **133**:423-30.

280. Mogues T, Goodrich M, Ryan L, LaCourse R and North R, **2001**. The Relative Importance of T Cell Subsets in Immunity and Immunopathology of Airborne Mycobacterium tuberculosis Infection in Mice. J Exp Med **193**:271-80.

University of Cape Town

281. Mohagheghpour N, Gammon D, Kawamura LM, van Vollenhoven A, Benike CJ and Engleman EG, **1998**. CTL response to Mycobacterium tuberculosis: identification of an immunogenic epitope in the 19-kDa lipoprotein. J Immunol **161**:2400-6.

282. Mohan VP, Scanga CA, Yu K, Scott HM, Tanaka KE, Tsang E, Tsai MM, Flynn JL and Chan J, **2001**. Effects of tumor necrosis factor alpha on host immune response in chronic persistent tuberculosis: possible role for limiting pathology. Infect Immun **69**:1847-55.

283. Mokrousov I, Otten T, Vyshnevskiy B and Narvskaya O, **2002**. Detection of embB306 Mutations in Ethambutol-Susceptible Clinical Isolates of Mycobacterium tuberculosis from Northwestern Russia: Implications for Genotypic Resistance Testing. J Clin Microbiol **40**:3810-3.

284. Molloy A, Laochumroonvorapong P and Kaplan G, **1994**. Apoptosis, but not necrosis, of infected monocytes is coupled with killing of intracellular bacillus Calmette-Guerin. J Exp Med **180**:1499-509.

285. Molloy A, Meyn PA, Smith KD and Kaplan G, **1993**. Recognition and destruction of Bacillus Calmette-Guerin-infected human monocytes. J Exp Med **177**:1691-8.

286. Moreira AL, Tsenova-Berkova L, Wang J, Laochumroonvorapong P, Freeman S, Freedman VH and Kaplan G, **1997**. Effect of cytokine modulation by thalidomide on the granulomatous response in murine tuberculosis. Tuber Lung Dis **78**:47-55.

287. Moreira AL, Wang J, Tsenova-Berkova L, Hellmann W, Freedman VH and Kaplan G, **1997**. Sequestration of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in tight vacuoles in vivo in lung macrophages of mice infected by the respiratory route. Infect Immun **65**:305-8.

288. Mosser DM and Karp CL, **1999**. Receptor mediated subversion of macrophage cytokine production by intracellular pathogens. Curr Opin Immunol **11**:406-11.

289. Muller I, Cobbold SP, Waldmann H and Kaufmann SH, **1987**. Impaired resistance to Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection after selective in vivo depletion of L3T4+ and Lyt-2+ T cells. Infect Immun **55**:2037-41.

290. Murphy EE, Terres G, Macatonia SE, Hsieh CS, Mattson J, Lanier L, Wysocka M, Trinchieri G, Murphy K and O'Garra A, **1994**. B7 and interleukin 12 cooperate for proliferation and interferon gamma production by mouse T helper clones that are unresponsive to B7 costimulation. J Exp Med **180**:223-31.

291. Mwinga A, Nunn A, Ngwira B, Chintu C, Warndorff D, Fine P, Darbyshire J and Zumla A, **2002**. Mycobacterium vaccae (SRL172) immunotherapy as an adjunct to standard antituberculosis treatment in HIV-infected adults with pulmonary tuberculosis: a randomised placebo-controlled trial. Lancet **360**:1050-5.

292. Nagata S and Golstein P, **1995**. The Fas death factor. Science **267**:1449-56.

University of Cape Town

293. Nair J, Rouse DA and Morris SL, **1992**. Nucleotide sequence analysis and serologic characterization of the Mycobacterium intracellulare homologue of the Mycobacterium tuberculosis 19 kDa antigen. Mol Microbiol **6**:1431-9.

294. Nau GJ, Richmond JF, Schlesinger A, Jennings EG, Lander ES and Young RA, **2002**. Human macrophage activation programs induced by bacterial pathogens. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **99**:1503-8.

295. Newport MJ, Huxley CM, Huston S, Hawrylowicz CM, Oostra BA, Williamson R and Levin M, **1996**. A mutation in the interferon-gamma-receptor gene and susceptibility to mycobacterial infection. N Engl J Med **335**:1941-9.

296. Neyrolles O, Gould K, Gares MP, Brett S, Janssen R, O'Gaora P, Herrmann JL, Prevost MC, Perret E, Thole JE and Young D, **2001**. Lipoprotein access to MHC class I presentation during infection of murine macrophages with live mycobacteria. J Immunol **166**:447-57.

297. Nicholson S, Bonecini-Almeida Mda G, Lapa e Silva JR, Nathan C, Xie QW, Mumford R, Weidner JR, Calaycay J, Geng J, Boechat N and et al., **1996**. Inducible nitric oxide synthase in pulmonary alveolar macrophages from patients with tuberculosis. J Exp Med **183**:2293-302.

298. Niemann S, Richter E and Rusch-Gerdes S, **1999**. Stability of Mycobacterium tuberculosis IS6110 restriction fragment length polymorphism patterns and spoligotypes determined by analyzing serial isolates from patients with drug-resistant tuberculosis. J Clin Microbiol **37**:409-12.

299. Nigou J, Zelle-Rieser C, Gilleron M, Thurnher M and Puzo G, **2001**. Mannosylated lipoarabinomannans inhibit IL-12 production by human dendritic cells: evidence for a negative signal delivered through the mannose receptor. J Immunol **166**:7477-85.

300. Nopponpunth V, Sirawaraporn W, Greene PJ and Santi DV, **1999**. Cloning and expression of Mycobacterium tuberculosis and Mycobacterium leprae dihydropteroate synthase in Escherichia coli. J Bacteriol **181**:6814-21.

301. North RJ and Izzo AA, **1993**. Mycobacterial virulence. Virulent strains of Mycobacteria tuberculosis have faster in vivo doubling times and are better equipped to resist growth-inhibiting functions of macrophages in the presence and absence of specific immunity. J Exp Med **177**:1723-33.

302. Noss EH, Pai RK, Sellati TJ, Radolf JD, Belisle J, Golenbock DT, Boom WH and Harding CV, **2001**. Toll-like receptor 2-dependent inhibition of macrophage class II MHC expression and antigen processing by 19-kDa lipoprotein of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Immunol **167**:910-8.

303. Nozaki Y, Hasegawa Y, Ichiyama S, Nakashima I and Shimokata K, **1997**. Mechanism of nitric oxide-dependent killing of Mycobacterium bovis BCG in human alveolar macrophages. Infect Immun **65**:3644-7.

University of Cape Town

304. Nunn P, **2001**. The global control of tuberculosis: what are the prospects? Scand J Infect Dis **33**:329-32.

305. Oddo M, Renno T, Attinger A, Bakker T, MacDonald HR and Meylan PR, **1998**. Fas ligand-induced apoptosis of infected human macrophages reduces the viability of intracellular Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Immunol **160**:5448-54.

306. Oftung F, Borka E and Mustafa AS, **1998**. Mycobacterium tuberculosis reactive T cell clones from naturally converted PPD-positive healthy subjects: recognition of the M. tuberculosis 16-kDa antigen. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol **20**:319-25.

307. Oftung F, Mustafa AS, Husson R, Young RA and Godal T, **1987**. Human T cell clones recognize two abundant Mycobacterium tuberculosis protein antigens expressed in Escherichia coli. J Immunol **138**:927-31.

308. Okwera A, Whalen C, Byekwaso F, Vjecha M, Johnson J, Huebner R, Mugerwa R and Ellner J, **1994**. Randomised trial of thiacetazone and rifampicin-containing regimens for pulmonary tuberculosis in HIV-infected Ugandans. The Makerere University-Case Western University Research Collaboration. Lancet **344**:1323-8.

309. Opie EL and Aronson JD, **1927**. Tubercle bacilli in latent tuberculous lesions and in lung tissue without tuberculous lesions. Arch. Pathol. **4**:1-21.

310. Orme IM, **1987**. The kinetics of emergence and loss of mediator T lymphocytes acquired in response to infection with Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Immunol **138**:293-8.

311. Ottenhoff TH and Mutis T, **1990**. Specific killing of cytotoxic T cells and antigen-presenting cells by CD4+ cytotoxic T cell clones. A novel potentially immunoregulatory T-T cell interaction in man. J Exp Med **171**:2011-24.

312. Ozinsky A, Underhill DM, Fontenot JD, Hajjar AM, Smith KD, Wilson CB, Schroeder L and Aderem A, **2000**. The repertoire for pattern recognition of pathogens by the innate immune system is defined by cooperation between toll-like receptors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **97**:13766-71.

313. Pape JW, Jean SS, Ho JL, Hafner A and Johnson WD, Jr., **1993**. Effect of isoniazid prophylaxis on incidence of active tuberculosis and progression of HIV infection. Lancet **342**:268-72.

314. Pascopella L, Collins FM, Martin JM, Lee MH, Hatfull GF, Stover CK, Bloom BR and Jacobs WR, Jr., **1994**. Use of in vivo complementation in Mycobacterium tuberculosis to identify a genomic fragment associated with virulence. Infect Immun **62**:1313-9.

315. Pathan AA, Wilkinson KA, Klenerman P, McShane H, Davidson RN, Pasvol G, Hill AV and Lalvani A, **2001**. Direct ex vivo analysis of antigen-specific IFN-gamma-secreting CD4 T cells in Mycobacterium tuberculosis-infected individuals: associations with clinical disease state and effect of treatment. J Immunol **167**:5217-25.

University of Cape Town

316. Pathan AA, Wilkinson KA, Wilkinson RJ, Latif M, McShane H, Pasvol G, Hill AV and Lalvani A, **2000**. High frequencies of circulating IFN-gamma-secreting CD8 cytotoxic T cells specific for a novel MHC class I-restricted Mycobacterium tuberculosis epitope in M. tuberculosis-infected subjects without disease. Eur J Immunol **30**:2713-21.

317. Paul S, Laochumroonvorapong P and Kaplan G, **1996**. Comparable growth of virulent and avirulent Mycobacterium tuberculosis in human macrophages in vitro. J Infect Dis **174**:105-12.

318. Perriens JH, St Louis ME, Mukadi YB, Brown C, Prignot J, Pouthier F, Portaels F, Willame JC, Mandala JK, Kaboto M and et al., **1995**. Pulmonary tuberculosis in HIV-infected patients in Zaire. A controlled trial of treatment for either 6 or 12 months. N Engl J Med **332**:779-84.

319. Peters W, Scott HM, Chambers HF, Flynn JL, Charo IF and Ernst JD, **2001**. Chemokine receptor 2 serves an early and essential role in resistance to Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **98**:7958-63.

320. Pethe K, Alonso S, Biet F, Delogu G, Brennan MJ, Locht C and Menozzi FD, **2001**. The heparin-binding haemagglutinin of M. tuberculosis is required for extrapulmonary dissemination. Nature **412**:190-4.

321. Pfeffer K, Matsuyama T, Kundig TM, Wakeham A, Kishihara K, Shahinian A, Wiegmann K, Ohashi PS, Kronke M and Mak TW, **1993**. Mice deficient for the 55 kd tumor necrosis factor receptor are resistant to endotoxic shock, yet succumb to L. monocytogenes infection. Cell **73**:457-67.

322. Picard C, Fieschi C, Altare F, Al-Jumaah S, Al-Hajjar S, Feinberg J, Dupuis S, Soudais C, Al-Mohsen IZ, Genin E, Lammas D, Kumararatne DS, Leclerc T, Rafii A, Frayha H, Murugasu B, Wah LB, Sinniah R, Loubser M, Okamoto E, Al-Ghonaium A, Tufenkeji H, Abel L and Casanova JL, **2002**. Inherited interleukin-12 deficiency: IL12B genotype and clinical phenotype of 13 patients from six kindreds. Am J Hum Genet **70**:336-48.

323. Pierce C, Dubos RJ and Middlebrook G, **1947**. Infection of mice with mammalian tubercle bacilli grown in tween-albumin liquid medium. J Exp Med **86**:159-173.

324. Pinner B and Pinner M, **1932**. Die aetiologie der tuberkulose - by Dr Robert Koch. Am Rev Tuberc **25**:285-323.

325. Porcelli S, Morita CT and Brenner MB, **1992**. CD1b restricts the response of human CD4-8- T lymphocytes to a microbial antigen. Nature **360**:593-7.

326. Post FA, Manca C, Neyrolles O, Ryffel B, Young DB and Kaplan G, **2001**. Mycobacterium tuberculosis 19-kilodalton lipoprotein inhibits Mycobacterium smegmatis-induced cytokine production by human macrophages in vitro. Infect Immun **69**:1433-9.

University of Cape Town

327. Post FA, Wood R and Pillay GP, **1995**. Pulmonary tuberculosis in HIV infection: radiographic appearance is related to CD4+ T-lymphocyte count. Tuber Lung Dis **76**:518-21.

328. Prestidge RL, Grandison PM, Chuk DW, Booth RJ and Watson JD, **1995**. Production of the 19-kDa antigen of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in Escherichia coli and its purification. Gene **164**:129-32.

329. Primm TP, Andersen SJ, Mizrahi V, Avarbock D, Rubin H and Barry CE, 3rd, **2000**. The stringent response of Mycobacterium tuberculosis is required for long-term survival. J Bacteriol **182**:4889-98.

330. Pulendran B, Palucka K and Banchereau J, **2001**. Sensing pathogens and tuning immune responses. Science **293**:253-6.

331. Pym AS, Brodin P, Majlessi L, Brosch R, Demangel C, Williams A, Griffiths KE, Marchal G, Leclerc C and Cole ST, **2003**. Recombinant BCG exporting ESAT-6 confers enhanced protection against tuberculosis. Nat Med **9**:533-9.

332. Pym AS, Saint-Joanis B and Cole ST, **2002**. Effect of katG mutations on the virulence of Mycobacterium tuberculosis and the implication for transmission in humans. Infect Immun **70**:4955-60.

333. Ramakrishnan L, Federspiel NA and Falkow S, **2000**. Granuloma-specific expression of Mycobacterium virulence proteins from the glycine-rich PE-PGRS family. Science **288**:1436-9.

334. Ramaswamy S and Musser JM, **1998**. Molecular genetic basis of antimicrobial agent resistance in Mycobacterium tuberculosis: 1998 update. Tuber Lung Dis **79**:3-29.

335. Ravikumar M, Dheenadhayalan V, Rajaram K, Lakshmi SS, Kumaran PP, Paramasivan CN, Balakrishnan K and Pitchappan RM, **1999**. Associations of HLA-DRB1, DQB1 and DPB1 alleles with pulmonary tuberculosis in south India. Tuber Lung Dis **79**:309-17.

336. Ravn P, Boesen H, Pedersen BK and Andersen P, **1997**. Human T cell responses induced by vaccination with Mycobacterium bovis bacillus Calmette-Guerin. J Immunol **158**:1949-55.

337. Ravn P, Demissie A, Eguale T, Wondwosson H, Lein D, Amoudy HA, Mustafa AS, Jensen AK, Holm A, Rosenkrands I, Oftung F, Olobo J, von Reyn F and Andersen P, **1999**. Human T cell responses to the ESAT-6 antigen from Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Infect Dis **179**:637-45.

338. Reiling N, Holscher C, Fehrenbach A, Kroger S, Kirschning CJ, Goyert S and Ehlers S, **2002**. Cutting edge: Toll-like receptor (TLR)2- and TLR4-mediated pathogen recognition in resistance to airborne infection with Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Immunol **169**:3480-4.

University of Cape Town

339. Rhoades ER, Cooper AM and Orme IM, **1995**. Chemokine response in mice infected with Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Infect Immun **63**:3871-7.

340. Ridzon R, Kent JH, Valway S, Weismuller P, Maxwell R, Elcock M, Meador J, Royce S, Shefer A, Smith P, Woodley C and Onorato I, **1997**. Outbreak of drug-resistant tuberculosis with second-generation transmission in a high school in California. J Pediatr **131**:863-8.

341. Roach DR, Bean AG, Demangel C, France MP, Briscoe H and Britton WJ, **2002**. TNF regulates chemokine induction essential for cell recruitment, granuloma formation, and clearance of mycobacterial infection. J Immunol **168**:4620-7.

342. Rodrigues LC, Diwan VK and Wheeler JG, **1993**. Protective effect of BCG against tuberculous meningitis and miliary tuberculosis: a meta-analysis. Int J Epidemiol **22**:1154-8.

343. Rodriguez GM, Gold B, Gomez M, Dussurget O and Smith I, **1999**. Identification and characterization of two divergently transcribed iron regulated genes in Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Tuber Lung Dis **79**:287-98.

344. Rook GA, Steele J, Ainsworth M and Champion BR, **1986**. Activation of macrophages to inhibit proliferation of Mycobacterium tuberculosis: comparison of the effects of recombinant gamma-interferon on human monocytes and murine peritoneal macrophages. Immunology **59**:333-8.

345. Rook GA, Steele J, Fraher L, Barker S, Karmali R, O'Riordan J and Stanford J, **1986**. Vitamin D3, gamma interferon, and control of proliferation of Mycobacterium tuberculosis by human monocytes. Immunology **57**:159-63.

346. Rosat JP, Grant EP, Beckman EM, Dascher CC, Sieling PA, Frederique D, Modlin RL, Porcelli SA, Furlong ST and Brenner MB, **1999**. CD1-restricted microbial lipid antigen-specific recognition found in the CD8+ alpha beta T cell pool. J Immunol **162**:366-71.

347. Rossouw M, Nel HJ, Cooke GS, van Helden PD and Hoal EG, **2003**. Association between tuberculosis and a polymorphic NFκB binding site in the interferon γ gene. Lancet **361**:1871-1872.

348. Sadek MI, Sada E, Toossi Z, Schwander SK and Rich EA, **1998**. Chemokines induced by infection of mononuclear phagocytes with mycobacteria and present in lung alveoli during active pulmonary tuberculosis. Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol **19**:513-21.

349. Saenghirunvattana S, Charoenpan P, Vathesatogkit P, Kiatboonsri S and Aeursudkij B, **1996**. Multidrug-resistant tuberculosis: response to treatment. J Med Assoc Thai **79**:601-3.

350. Sambandamurthy VK, Wang X, Chen B, Russell RG, Derrick S, Collins FM, Morris SL and Jacobs WR, Jr., **2002**. A pantothenate auxotroph of Mycobacterium

University of Cape Town

tuberculosis is highly attenuated and protects mice against tuberculosis. Nat Med **8**:1171-4.

351. Sarmento AM and Appelberg R, **1995**. Relationship between virulence of Mycobacterium avium strains and induction of tumor necrosis factor alpha production in infected mice and in in vitro-cultured mouse macrophages. Infect Immun **63**:3759-64.

352. Sato K, Akaki T and Tomioka H, **1998**. Differential potentiation of anti-mycobacterial activity and reactive nitrogen intermediate-producing ability of murine peritoneal macrophages activated by interferon-gamma (IFN-gamma) and tumour necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-alpha). Clin Exp Immunol **112**:63-8.

353. Saunders BM, Frank AA, Orme IM and Cooper AM, **2000**. Interleukin-6 induces early gamma interferon production in the infected lung but is not required for generation of specific immunity to Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection. Infect Immun **68**:3322-6.

354. Scanga CA, Mohan VP, Joseph H, Yu K, Chan J and Flynn JL, **1999**. Reactivation of latent tuberculosis: variations on the Cornell murine model. Infect Immun **67**:4531-8.

355. Scanga CA, Mohan VP, Yu K, Joseph H, Tanaka K, Chan J and Flynn JL, **2000**. Depletion of CD4(+) T cells causes reactivation of murine persistent tuberculosis despite continued expression of interferon gamma and nitric oxide synthase 2. J Exp Med **192**:347-58.

356. Schaaf HS, Botha P, Beyers N, Gie RP, Vermeulen HA, Groenewald P, Coetzee GJ and Donald PR, **1996**. The 5-year outcome of multidrug resistant tuberculosis patients in the Cape Province of South Africa. Trop Med Int Health **1**:718-22.

357. Schaaf HS, Van Rie A, Gie RP, Beyers N, Victor TC, Van Helden PD and Donald PR, **2000**. Transmission of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. Pediatr Infect Dis J **19**:695-9.

358. Schluger NW and Rom WN, **1998**. The host immune response to tuberculosis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med **157**:679-91.

359. Segal W and Bloch H, **1956**. Biochemical differentiation of Mycobacterium tuberculosis grown in vivo and in vitro. J Bacteriol **72**:132-141.

360. Selwyn PA, Hartel D, Lewis VA, Schoenbaum EE, Vermund SH, Klein RS, Walker AT and Friedland GH, **1989**. A prospective study of the risk of tuberculosis among intravenous drug users with human immunodeficiency virus infection. N Engl J Med **320**:545-50.

361. Serbina NV and Flynn JL, **1999**. Early emergence of CD8(+) T cells primed for production of type 1 cytokines in the lungs of Mycobacterium tuberculosis-infected mice. Infect Immun **67**:3980-8.

University of Cape Town

362. Sever JL and Youmans GP, **1957**. The enumeration of nonpathogenic viable tubercle bacilli from the organs of mice. Am Rev Tuberc Pulm Dis **75**:280-294.

363. Shaw TC, Thomas LH and Friedland JS, **2000**. Regulation of IL-10 secretion after phagocytosis of Mycobacterium tuberculosis by human monocytic cells. Cytokine **12**:483-6.

364. Shen Y, Zhou D, Qiu L, Lai X, Simon M, Shen L, Kou Z, Wang Q, Jiang L, Estep J, Hunt R, Clagett M, Sehgal PK, Li Y, Zeng X, Morita CT, Brenner MB, Letvin NL and Chen ZW, **2002**. Adaptive immune response of Vgamma2Vdelta2+ T cells during mycobacterial infections. Science **295**:2255-8.

365. Shi L, Jung YJ, Tyagi S, Gennaro ML and North RJ, **2003**. Expression of Th1-mediated immunity in mouse lungs induces a Mycobacterium tuberculosis transcription pattern characteristic of nonreplicating persistence. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **100**:241-6.

366. Siddiqui MR, Moreira AL, Negesse Y, Taye GA, Hanekom WA, Haslett PA, Britton S and Kaplan G, **2002**. Local nerve damage in leprosy does not lead to an impaired cellular immune response or decreased wound healing in the skin. J Infect Dis **186**:260-5.

367. Sieling PA, Chatterjee D, Porcelli SA, Prigozy TI, Mazzaccaro RJ, Soriano T, Bloom BR, Brenner MB, Kronenberg M, Brennan PJ and et al., **1995**. CD1-restricted T cell recognition of microbial lipoglycan antigens. Science **269**:227-30.

368. Silva CL, Bonato VL, Lima VM, Faccioli LH and Leao SC, **1999**. Characterization of the memory/activated T cells that mediate the long- lived host response against tuberculosis after bacillus Calmette-Guerin or DNA vaccination. Immunology **97**:573-81.

369. Silver RF, Li Q and Ellner JJ, **1998**. Expression of virulence of Mycobacterium tuberculosis within human monocytes: virulence correlates with intracellular growth and induction of tumor necrosis factor alpha but not with evasion of lymphocyte-dependent monocyte effector functions. Infect Immun **66**:1190-9.

370. Skinner MA, Yuan S, Prestidge R, Chuk D, Watson JD and Tan PL, **1997**. Immunization with heat-killed Mycobacterium vaccae stimulates CD8+ cytotoxic T cells specific for macrophages infected with Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Infect Immun **65**:4525-30.

371. Sly LM, Hingley-Wilson SM, Reiner NE and McMaster WR, **2003**. Survival of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in host macrophages involves resistance to apoptosis dependent upon induction of antiapoptotic Bcl-2 family member Mcl-1. J Immunol **170**:430-7.

372. Small PM, Hopewell PC, Singh SP, Paz A, Parsonnet J, Ruston DC, Schecter GF, Daley CL and Schoolnik GK, **1994**. The epidemiology of tuberculosis in San Francisco. A population-based study using conventional and molecular methods. N Engl J Med **330**:1703-9.

University of Cape Town

373. Small PM, Schecter GF, Goodman PC, Sande MA, Chaisson RE and Hopewell PC, **1991**. Treatment of tuberculosis in patients with advanced human immunodeficiency virus infection. N Engl J Med **324**:289-94.

374. Small PM, Shafer RW, Hopewell PC, Singh SP, Murphy MJ, Desmond E, Sierra MF and Schoolnik GK, **1993**. Exogenous reinfection with multidrug-resistant Mycobacterium tuberculosis in patients with advanced HIV infection. N Engl J Med **328**:1137-44.

375. Snider DE, Jr., Kelly GD, Cauthen GM, Thompson NJ and Kilburn JO, **1985**. Infection and disease among contacts of tuberculosis cases with drug- resistant and drug-susceptible bacilli. Am Rev Respir Dis **132**:125-32.

376. Soborg C, Andersen AB, Madsen HO, Kok-Jensen A, Skinhoj P and Garred P, **2002**. Natural resistance-associated macrophage protein 1 polymorphisms are associated with microscopy-positive tuberculosis. J Infect Dis **186**:517-21.

377. Sodhi A, Gong J, Silva C, Qian D and Barnes PF, **1997**. Clinical correlates of interferon gamma production in patients with tuberculosis. Clin Infect Dis **25**:617-20.

378. Sreevatsan S, Pan X, Stockbauer KE, Connell ND, Kreiswirth BN, Whittam TS and Musser JM, **1997**. Restricted structural gene polymorphism in the Mycobacterium tuberculosis complex indicates evolutionarily recent global dissemination. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **94**:9869-74.

379. Stead WW, **1967**. Pathogenesis of a first episode of chronic pulmonary tuberculosis in man: recrudescence of residuals of the primary infection or exogenous reinfection? Am Rev Respir Dis **95**:729-45.

380. Stead WW, Kerby GR, Schlueter DP and Jordahl CW, **1968**. The clinical spectrum of primary tuberculosis in adults. Ann Intern Med **68**:731-745.

381. Steenken J, W. and Gardner LU, **1946**. History of H37 strain of tubercle bacillus. Amer. Rev. Tuberc **54**:62-66.

382. Stenger S, Hanson DA, Teitelbaum R, Dewan P, Niazi KR, Froelich CJ, Ganz T, Thoma-Uszynski S, Melian A, Bogdan C, Porcelli SA, Bloom BR, Krensky AM and Modlin RL, **1998**. An antimicrobial activity of cytolytic T cells mediated by granulysin. Science **282**:121-5.

383. Stenger S, Mazzaccaro RJ, Uyemura K, Cho S, Barnes PF, Rosat JP, Sette A, Brenner MB, Porcelli SA, Bloom BR and Modlin RL, **1997**. Differential effects of cytolytic T cell subsets on intracellular infection. Science **276**:1684-7.

384. Stover CK, Warrener P, VanDevanter DR, Sherman DR, Arain TM, Langhorne MH, Anderson SW, Towell JA, Yuan Y, McMurray DN, Kreiswirth BN, Barry CE and Baker WR, **2000**. A small-molecule nitroimidazopyran drug candidate for the treatment of tuberculosis. Nature **405**:962-6.

University of Cape Town

385. Sturgill-Koszycki S, Schlesinger PH, Chakraborty P, Haddix PL, Collins HL, Fok AK, Allen RD, Gluck SL, Heuser J and Russell DG, **1994**. Lack of acidification in Mycobacterium phagosomes produced by exclusion of the vesicular proton-ATPase. Science **263**:678-81.

386. Suarez PG, Floyd K, Portocarrero J, Alarcon E, Rapiti E, Ramos G, Bonilla C, Sabogal I, Aranda I, Dye C, Raviglione M and Espinal MA, **2002**. Feasibility and cost-effectiveness of standardised second-line drug treatment for chronic tuberculosis patients: a national cohort study in Peru. Lancet **359**:1980-9.

387. Sugawara I, Yamada H, Kaneko H, Mizuno S, Takeda K and Akira S, **1999**. Role of interleukin-18 (IL-18) in mycobacterial infection in IL-18-gene- disrupted mice. Infect Immun **67**:2585-9.

388. Surcel HM, Troye-Blomberg M, Paulie S, Andersson G, Moreno C, Pasvol G and Ivanyi J, **1994**. Thl/Th2 profiles in tuberculosis, based on the proliferation and cytokine response of blood lymphocytes to mycobacterial antigens. Immunology **81**:171-6.

389. Suter E, **1952**. The multiplication of tubercle bacilli within normal phagocytes in tissue culture. J Exp Med **96**:137-150.

390. Sutherland I, **1976**. Recent studies in the epidemiology of tuberculosis, based on the risk of being infected with tubercle bacilli. Adv Tuberc Res **19**:1-63.

391. Tahaoglu K, Torun T, Sevim T, Atac G, Kir A, Karasulu L, Ozmen I and Kapakli N, **2001**. The treatment of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis in Turkey. N Engl J Med **345**:170-4.

392. Tailleux L, Schwartz O, Herrmann JL, Pivert E, Jackson M, Amara A, Legres L, Dreher D, Nicod LP, Gluckman JC, Lagrange PH, Gicquel B and Neyrolles O, **2003**. DC-SIGN Is the Major Mycobacterium tuberculosis Receptor on Human Dendritic Cells. J Exp Med **197**:121-127.

393. Tan JS, Canaday DH, Boom WH, Balaji KN, Schwander SK and Rich EA, **1997**. Human alveolar T lymphocyte responses to Mycobacterium tuberculosis antigens: role for CD4+ and CD8+ cytotoxic T cells and relative resistance of alveolar macrophages to lysis. J Immunol **159**:290-7.

394. Tascon RE, Colston MJ, Ragno S, Stavropoulos E, Gregory D and Lowrie DB, **1996**. Vaccination against tuberculosis by DNA injection. Nat Med **2**:888-92.

395. Tascon RE, Ragno S, Lowrie DB and Colston MJ, **2000**. Immunostimulatory bacterial DNA sequences activate dendritic cells and promote priming and differentiation of CD8+ T cells. Immunology **99**:1-7.

396. Taylor JL, Turner OC, Basaraba RJ, Belisle JT, Huygen K and Orme IM, **2003**. Pulmonary necrosis resulting from DNA vaccination against tuberculosis. Infect Immun **71**:2192-8.

University of Cape Town

397. Teixeira L, Perkins MD, Johnson JL, Keller R, Palaci M, do Valle Dettoni V, Canedo Rocha LM, Debanne S, Talbot E and Dietze R, **2001**. Infection and disease among household contacts of patients with multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. Int J Tuberc Lung Dis **5**:321-8.

398. Tekaia F, Gordon SV, Garnier T, Brosch R, Barrell BG and Cole ST, **1999**. Analysis of the proteome of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in silico. Tuber Lung Dis **79**:329-42.

399. Telenti A, Imboden P, Marchesi F, Lowrie D, Cole S, Colston MJ, Matter L, Schopfer K and Bodmer T, **1993**. Detection of rifampicin-resistance mutations in Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Lancet **341**:647-50.

400. Thoma-Uszynski S, Stenger S, Takeuchi O, Ochoa MT, Engele M, Sieling PA, Barnes PF, Rollinghoff M, Bolcskei PL, Wagner M, Akira S, Norgard MV, Belisle JT, Godowski PJ, Bloom BR and Modlin RL, **2001**. Induction of direct antimicrobial activity through mammalian toll-like receptors. Science **291**:1544-7.

401. Ting LM, Kim AC, Cattamanchi A and Ernst JD, **1999**. Mycobacterium tuberculosis inhibits IFN-gamma transcriptional responses without inhibiting activation of STAT1. J Immunol **163**:3898-906.

402. Toossi Z and Ellner JJ, **1998**. The role of TGF beta in the pathogenesis of human tuberculosis. Clin Immunol Immunopathol **87**:107-14.

403. Toossi Z, Gogate P, Shiratsuchi H, Young T and Ellner JJ, **1995**. Enhanced production of TGF-beta by blood monocytes from patients with active tuberculosis and presence of TGF-beta in tuberculous granulomatous lung lesions. J Immunol **154**:465-73.

404. Torres MJ, Criado A, Palomares JC and Aznar J, **2000**. Use of real-time PCR and fluorimetry for rapid detection of rifampin and isoniazid resistance-associated mutations in Mycobacterium tuberculosis. J Clin Microbiol **38**:3194-9.

405. Trinchieri G, **1997**. Cytokines acting on or secreted by macrophages during intracellular infection (IL-10, IL-12, IFN-gamma). Curr Opin Immunol **9**:17-23.

406. Tsukaguchi K, Balaji KN and Boom WH, **1995**. CD4+ alpha beta T cell and gamma delta T cell responses to Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Similarities and differences in Ag recognition, cytotoxic effector function, and cytokine production. J Immunol **154**:1786-96.

407. Tullius MV, Harth G and Horwitz MA, **2003**. Glutamine synthetase GlnA1 is essential for growth of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in human THP-1 macrophages and guinea pigs. Infect Immun **71**:3927-36.

408. Turner OC, Roberts AD, Frank AA, Phalen SW, McMurray DM, Content J, Denis O, D'Souza S, Tanghe A, Huygen K and Orme IM, **2000**. Lack of protection in mice and necrotizing bronchointerstitial pneumonia with bronchiolitis in guinea pigs immunized with vaccines directed against the hsp60 molecule of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Infect Immun **68**:3674-9.

University of Cape Town

409. Ulrichs T, Moody DB, Grant E, Kaufmann SH and Porcelli SA, **2003**. T-cell responses to CD1-presented lipid antigens in humans with Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection. Infect Immun **71**:3076-87.

410. Underhill DM, Ozinsky A, Hajjar AM, Stevens A, Wilson CB, Bassetti M and Aderem A, **1999**. The Toll-like receptor 2 is recruited to macrophage phagosomes and discriminates between pathogens. Nature **401**:811-5.

411. Underhill DM, Ozinsky A, Smith KD and Aderem A, **1999**. Toll-like receptor-2 mediates mycobacteria-induced proinflammatory signaling in macrophages. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **96**:14459-63.

412. Valway SE, Sanchez MP, Shinnick TF, Orme I, Agerton T, Hoy D, Jones JS, Westmoreland H and Onorato IM, **1998**. An outbreak involving extensive transmission of a virulent strain of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. N Engl J Med **338**:633-9.

413. van der Spuy GD, Warren RM, Richardson M, Beyers N, Behr MA and van Helden P, **2001**. Genetic distance: a measure of ongoing transmission. 4th World Congress on Tuberculosis, Washington D.C., June 3-5, 2002 abstract 28.

414. van Helden PD, Warren RM, Victor TC, van der Spuy G, Richardson M and Hoal-van Helden E, **2002**. Strain families of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Trends Microbiol **10**:167-8.

415. van Leuven M, De Groot M, Shean KP, von Oppell UO and Willcox PA, **1997**. Pulmonary resection as an adjunct in the treatment of multiple drug- resistant tuberculosis. Ann Thorac Surg **63**:1368-72; discussion 1372-3.

416. Van Rie A, Warren R, Mshanga I, Jordaan AM, van der Spuy GD, Richardson M, Simpson J, Gie RP, Enarson DA, Beyers N, van Helden PD and Victor TC, **2001**. Analysis for a limited number of gene codons can predict drug resistance of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in a high-incidence community. J Clin Microbiol **39**:636-41.

417. Van Rie A, Warren R, Richardson M, Gie RP, Enarson DA, Beyers N and Van Helden PD, **2000**. Classification of drug-resistant tuberculosis in an epidemic area. Lancet **356**:22-5.

418. van Rie A, Warren R, Richardson M, Victor TC, Gie RP, Enarson DA, Beyers N and van Helden PD, **1999**. Exogenous reinfection as a cause of recurrent tuberculosis after curative treatment. N Engl J Med **341**:1174-9.

419. van Rie A, Warren RM, Beyers N, Gie RP, Classen CN, Richardson M, Sampson SL, Victor TC and van Helden PD, **1999**. Transmission of a multidrug-resistant Mycobacterium tuberculosis strain resembling "strain W" among noninstitutionalized, human immunodeficiency virus-seronegative patients. J Infect Dis **180**:1608-15.

University of Cape Town

420. Vandiviere HM, Loring WE, Melvin I and Willis S, **1956**. The treated pulmonary lesion and its tubercle bacillus. II. The death and resurrection. Am J Med Sci **232**:30-37.

421. Vankayalapati R, Wizel B, Weis SE, Klucar P, Shams H, Samten B and Barnes PF, **2003**. Serum cytokine concentrations do not parallel Mycobacterium tuberculosis-induced cytokine production in patients with tuberculosis. Clin Infect Dis **36**:24-8.

422. Vankayalapati R, Wizel B, Weis SE, Samten B, Girard WM and Barnes PF, **2000**. Production of interleukin-18 in human tuberculosis. J Infect Dis **182**:234-9.

423. Vekemans J, Lienhardt C, Sillah JS, Wheeler JG, Lahai GP, Doherty MT, Corrah T, Andersen P, McAdam KP and Marchant A, **2001**. Tuberculosis contacts but not patients have higher gamma interferon responses to ESAT-6 than do community controls in The Gambia. Infect Immun **69**:6554-7.

424. Verbon A, Juffermans N, Van Deventer SJ, Speelman P, Van Deutekom H and Van Der Poll T, **1999**. Serum concentrations of cytokines in patients with active tuberculosis (TB) and after treatment. Clin Exp Immunol **115**:110-3.

425. Verbon A, Kuijper S, Jansen HM, Speelman P and Kolk AH, **1992**. Antibodies against secreted and non-secreted antigens in mice after infection with live Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Scand J Immunol **36**:371-84.

426. Wang CH, Liu CY, Lin HC, Yu CT, Chung KF and Kuo HP, **1998**. Increased exhaled nitric oxide in active pulmonary tuberculosis due to inducible NO synthase upregulation in alveolar macrophages. Eur Respir J **11**:809-15.

427. Warren R, Hauman J, Beyers N, Richardson M, Schaaf HS, Donald P and van Helden P, **1996**. Unexpectedly high strain diversity of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in a high-incidence community. S Afr Med J **86**:45-9.

428. Warren RM, Van Der Spuy GD, Richardson M, Beyers N, Borgdorff MW, Behr MA and Van Helden PD, **2002**. Calculation of the Stability of the IS6110 Banding Pattern in Patients with Persistent Mycobacterium tuberculosis Disease. J Clin Microbiol **40**:1705-1708.

429. Wayne LG, **1977**. Synchronized replication of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Infect Immun **17**:528-30.

430. Wayne LG and Salkin D, **1956**. The bacteriology of resected tuberculous pulmonary lesions. Am Rev Tuberc Pulm Dis **74**:376-387.

431. Weyer K, Groenewald P, Zwarenstein M and Lombard CJ, **1995**. Tuberculosis drug resistance in the Western Cape. S Afr Med J **85**:499-504.

432. Whalen CC, Johnson JL, Okwera A, Hom DL, Huebner R, Mugyenyi P, Mugerwa RD and Ellner JJ, **1997**. A trial of three regimens to prevent tuberculosis in Ugandan adults infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. Uganda-Case Western Reserve University Research Collaboration. N Engl J Med **337**:801-8.

University of Cape Town

433. Wilkinson RJ, DesJardin LE, Islam N, Gibson BM, Kanost RA, Wilkinson KA, Poelman D, Eisenach KD and Toossi Z, **2001**. An increase in expression of a Mycobacterium tuberculosis mycolyl transferase gene (fbpB) occurs early after infection of human monocytes. Mol Microbiol **39**:813-21.

434. Wilkinson RJ, Llewelyn M, Toossi Z, Patel P, Pasvol G, Lalvani A, Wright D, Latif M and Davidson RN, **2000**. Influence of vitamin D deficiency and vitamin D receptor polymorphisms on tuberculosis among Gujarati Asians in west London: a case-control study. Lancet **355**:618-21.

435. Wilkinson RJ, Patel P, Llewelyn M, Hirsch CS, Pasvol G, Snounou G, Davidson RN and Toossi Z, **1999**. Influence of polymorphism in the genes for the interleukin (IL)-1 receptor antagonist and IL-1beta on tuberculosis. J Exp Med **189**:1863-74.

436. Wood R, Maartens G and Lombard CJ, **2000**. Risk factors for developing tuberculosis in HIV-1-infected adults from communities with a low or very high incidence of tuberculosis. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr **23**:75-80.

437. Xu S, Cooper A, Sturgill-Koszycki S, van Heyningen T, Chatterjee D, Orme I, Allen P and Russell DG, **1994**. Intracellular trafficking in Mycobacterium tuberculosis and Mycobacterium avium-infected macrophages. J Immunol **153**:2568-78.

438. Yamada H, Mizumo S, Horai R, Iwakura Y and Sugawara I, **2000**. Protective role of interleukin-1 in mycobacterial infection in IL-1 alpha/beta double-knockout mice. Lab Invest **80**:759-67.

439. Yegian D, **1952**. Biology of tubercle bacilli in necrotic lesions. Am Rev Tuberc **66**:629-630.

440. Yeh RW, Ponce de Leon A, Agasino CB, Hahn JA, Daley CL, Hopewell PC and Small PM, **1998**. Stability of Mycobacterium tuberculosis DNA genotypes. J Infect Dis **177**:1107-11.

441. Yeremeev VV, Lyadova IV, Nikonenko BV, Apt AS, Abou-Zeid C, Inwald J and Young DB, **2000**. The 19-kD antigen and protective immunity in a murine model of tuberculosis. Clin Exp Immunol **120**:274-9.

442. Yeremeev VV, Stewart GR, Neyrolles O, Skrabal K, Avdienko VG, Apt AS and Young DB, **2000**. Deletion of the 19kDa antigen does not alter the protective efficacy of BCG. Tuber Lung Dis **80**:243-7.

443. Young DB and Garbe TR, **1991**. Lipoprotein antigens of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Res Microbiol **142**:55-65.

444. Yuan Y, Crane DD and Barry CE, 3rd, **1996**. Stationary phase-associated protein expression in Mycobacterium tuberculosis: function of the mycobacterial alpha-crystallin homolog. J Bacteriol **178**:4484-92.

University of Cape Town

445. Yuan Y, Crane DD, Simpson RM, Zhu YQ, Hickey MJ, Sherman DR and Barry CE, 3rd, **1998**. The 16-kDa alpha-crystallin (Acr) protein of Mycobacterium tuberculosis is required for growth in macrophages. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A **95**:9578-83.

446. Zhang M, Gately MK, Wang E, Gong J, Wolf SF, Lu S, Modlin RL and Barnes PF, **1994**. Interleukin 12 at the site of disease in tuberculosis. J Clin Invest **93**:1733-9.

447. Zhang M, Gong J, Lin Y and Barnes PF, **1998**. Growth of virulent and avirulent Mycobacterium tuberculosis strains in human macrophages. Infect Immun **66**:794-9.

448. Zhang M, Gong J, Yang Z, Samten B, Cave MD and Barnes PF, **1999**. Enhanced capacity of a widespread strain of Mycobacterium tuberculosis to grow in human macrophages. J Infect Dis **179**:1213-7.

449. Zhang Y, Broser M, Cohen H, Bodkin M, Law K, Reibman J and Rom WN, **1995**. Enhanced interleukin-8 release and gene expression in macrophages after exposure to Mycobacterium tuberculosis and its components. J Clin Invest **95**:586-92.

450. Zhang Y, Heym B, Allen B, Young D and Cole S, **1992**. The catalase-peroxidase gene and isoniazid resistance of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Nature **358**:591-3.

451. Zhu X, Venkataprasad N, Ivanyi J and Vordermeier HM, **1997**. Vaccination with recombinant vaccinia viruses protects mice against Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection. Immunology **92**:6-9.

452. Zimhony O, Cox JS, Welch JT, Vilcheze C and Jacobs WR, Jr., **2000**. Pyrazinamide inhibits the eukaryotic-like fatty acid synthetase I (FASI) of Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Nat Med **6**:1043-7.

453. Zink AR, Sola C, Reischl U, Grabner W, Rastogi N, Wolf H and Nerlich AG, **2003**. Characterization of Mycobacterium tuberculosis Complex DNAs from Egyptian Mummies by Spoligotyping. J Clin Microbiol **41**:359-367.

University of Cape Town

University of Cape Town